



(86) Date de dépôt PCT/PCT Filing Date: 2006/12/21
(87) Date publication PCT/PCT Publication Date: 2007/07/05
(45) Date de délivrance/Issue Date: 2010/09/21
(85) Entrée phase nationale/National Entry: 2008/05/28
(86) N° demande PCT/PCT Application No.: JP 2006/325533
(87) N° publication PCT/PCT Publication No.: 2007/074714
(30) Priorité/Priority: 2005/12/27 (JP2005-376540)

(51) Cl.Int./Int.Cl. *B60W 30/02* (2006.01),
B60T 8/1755 (2006.01), *B60W 10/04* (2006.01),
B60W 10/18 (2006.01), *B60W 40/06* (2006.01),
B60W 40/10 (2006.01)

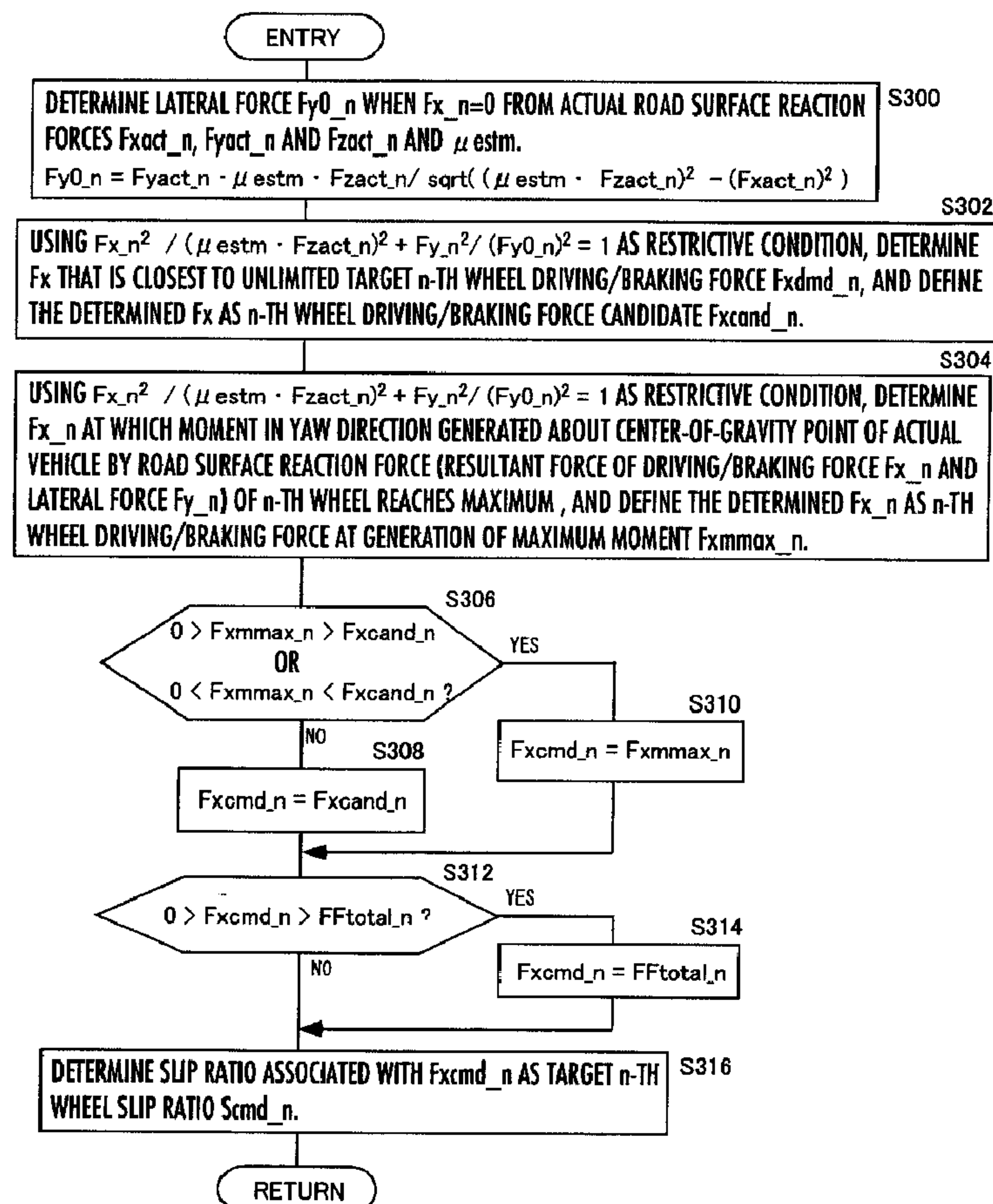
(72) Inventeurs/Inventors:
TAKENAKA, TORU, JP;
TOYOSHIMA, TAKAYUKI, JP;
URABE, HIROYUKI, JP;
KONO, HIROSHI, JP

(73) Propriétaire/Owner:
HONDA MOTOR CO., LTD., JP

(74) Agent: GOUDREAU GAGE DUBUC

(54) Titre : CONTROLEUR DE VEHICULE

(54) Title: CONTROLLER OF VEHICLE



(57) Abrégé/Abstract:

A driving/braking force manipulation control input of a k-th wheel, which denotes one or more specific wheels among a plurality of wheels of a vehicle, is determined such that a required condition concerning a relationship among a road surface reaction force

(57) **Abrégé(suite)/Abstract(continued):**

that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel on the basis of the detected values or estimated values of a road surface reaction force and a friction characteristic of the k-th wheel, a feedback control input related to the driving/braking force of the k-th wheel for bringing a difference between a state amount of the vehicle and a reference state amount close to zero, a driving/braking force feedforward control input based on a drive manipulated variable supplied by a driver of the vehicle, and a k-th wheel driving/braking force manipulation control input is satisfied. This arrangement makes it possible to properly control a motion of an actual vehicle to a desired motion while properly considering the characteristics of a road surface reaction force acting from a road surface on a wheel.

- 285 -

ABSTRACT

A driving/braking force manipulation control input of a k-th wheel, which denotes one or more specific wheels among a plurality of wheels of a vehicle, is determined such that a required condition concerning a relationship among a road surface reaction force that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel on the basis of the detected values or estimated values of a road surface reaction force and a friction characteristic of the k-th wheel, a feedback control input related to the driving/braking force of the k-th wheel for bringing a difference between a state amount of the vehicle and a reference state amount close to zero, a driving/braking force feedforward control input based on a drive manipulated variable supplied by a driver of the vehicle, and a k-th wheel driving/braking force manipulation control input is satisfied. This arrangement makes it possible to properly control a motion of an actual vehicle to a desired motion while properly considering the characteristics of a road surface reaction force acting from a road surface on a wheel.

DEMANDES OU BREVETS VOLUMINEUX

**LA PRÉSENTE PARTIE DE CETTE DEMANDE OU CE BREVETS
COMPREND PLUS D'UN TOME.**

CECI EST LE TOME __1__ DE __2__

NOTE: Pour les tomes additionels, veuillez contacter le Bureau Canadien des Brevets.

JUMBO APPLICATIONS / PATENTS

**THIS SECTION OF THE APPLICATION / PATENT CONTAINS MORE
THAN ONE VOLUME.**

THIS IS VOLUME __1__ OF __2__

NOTE: For additional volumes please contact the Canadian Patent Office.

- 1 -

DESCRIPTION

CONTROLLER OF VEHICLE

Technical Field

[0001] The present invention relates to a controller of a
5 vehicle having a plurality of wheels, such as an
automobile (engine automobile), a hybrid car, and a two-
wheeled motor vehicle.

Background Art

[0002] A vehicle, such as an automobile, is provided with
10 systems, including a driving/braking system that transmits
a driving force from a propulsive force generating source,
such as an engine, to wheels or imparts a braking force
thereto, a steering system (steering control system) for
controlling the steering control wheels of a vehicle, and
15 a suspension system that elastically supports a vehicle
body on wheels, as main mechanisms. Furthermore, in
recent years, there has been known a vehicle provided with
a variety of electric or hydraulic actuators to actively
(positively) control the operations of the actuators
20 according to a traveling condition of the vehicle or an
environmental condition or the like as well as passively
operating the systems in response to operations (man-
caused operations) of a steering wheel (driver's wheel),
an accelerator (gas) pedal, a brake pedal and the like
25 performed by a driver, as shown in, for example, Japanese
Patent Application Laid-Open No. 2000-41386 (hereinafter
referred to as patent document 1).

- 2 -

[0003] Patent document 1 proposes a technique in which the feedforward target value of a rear wheel steering angle is determined on the basis of a front wheel steering angle, the feedback target value of the rear wheel steering angle is also determined on the basis of a difference between a reference state amount (a reference yaw rate and a reference lateral acceleration) and an actual state amount (a yaw rate detection value and a lateral acceleration detection value), and then the rear wheel steering angle follows the sum of the target values. In this case, the reference state amount is set on the basis of a front wheel steering angle. Further, the parameters or gains of transfer functions of a feedforward controller, a feedback controller, and a reference state amount determiner are adjusted on the basis of an estimated value of a friction coefficient of a road surface.

[0004] However, according to the technique disclosed in the above-mentioned patent document 1, the influences of the characteristics of a road surface reaction force acting on a wheel are not adequately taken into account although the friction characteristics of a road surface are taken into account. More specifically, the values that may be taken by a driving/braking force component and a lateral force component of a road surface reaction force acting on a wheel or a correlation therebetween is subjected to the influence of a side slip of a wheel in

- 3 -

addition to the friction characteristic of a road surface. And, the influences of the side slip and the like are not fully considered in the technology disclosed in patent document 1. For this reason, there are cases where a
5 proper road surface reaction force for bringing the actual state amount close to the reference state amount cannot be generated in a wheel even when a rear wheel steering angle is feedback-controlled.

[0005] Meanwhile, to control a motion of a vehicle to a
10 desired motion, it is considered desirable to properly control a road surface reaction force as an external force acting on the vehicle. In this case, a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of the vehicle can be manipulated by manipulating, for
15 example, a driving/braking force to be applied to each wheel from a road surface. Hence, the driving/braking force to be applied to each wheel from the road surface could be manipulated to control the behaviors of the vehicle such that an actual state amount related to a
20 motion in the yaw direction approximates a reference state amount.

[0006] However, in this case, as described above, the driving/braking force component and the lateral force component of a road surface reaction force are subjected
25 to the influences of not only the friction characteristics, such as the coefficient of friction between a wheel and a road surface, but also a side slip of the wheel.

- 4 -

Therefore, it is desired to manipulate the driving/braking force to be applied to a wheel while properly considering such characteristics of a road surface reaction force.

[0007] The present invention has been made in view of the background described above, and it is an object thereof to provide a controller of a vehicle capable of properly controlling a motion of an actual vehicle to a desired motion while properly considering the characteristics of a road surface reaction force acting on a wheel from a road surface. Another object is to provide a controller of a vehicle capable of properly controlling a vehicle motion by enhancing the robustness against disturbance factors or changes therein.

Disclosure of Invention

[0008] To fulfill the objects, according to the present invention, there is provided a controller of a vehicle equipped with a drive manipulated variable detecting means which detects a drive manipulated variable that indicates a drive manipulation state of the vehicle driven by a driver of the vehicle having a plurality of wheels, an actuator device provided in the vehicle so as to permit the manipulation of at least the driving/braking force of each wheel of the vehicle, and an actuator device control means which sequentially controls an operation of the actuator device, the controller of a vehicle comprising:

an actual state amount grasping means which detects or estimates a first actual state amount, which is

the value of a predetermined first state amount related to a predetermined motion including at least a rotational motion in a yaw direction of an actual vehicle;

5 an actual road surface reaction force grasping means which detects or estimates a road surface reaction force acting from a road surface onto each wheel of the actual vehicle;

10 a friction characteristic estimating means which estimates the characteristic of friction between a wheel of the actual vehicle and a road surface;

15 a reference manipulated variable determining means which determines a first reference state amount, which is the reference value of the first state amount, based on at least the detected drive manipulated variable,

 a state amount error calculating means which calculates a first state amount error, which is a difference between the detected or estimated first actual state amount and the determined first reference state amount; and

20 an actual vehicle actuator operation control input determining means which determines an actual vehicle actuator operation control input, which is a control input for operating the actuator device and which includes a driving/braking force manipulation control input defining a target driving/braking force of each wheel of the actual vehicle, on the basis of at least the detected drive manipulated variable and the calculated first state amount error,

30 wherein the actuator device control means is a means which controls the operation of the actuator device on the basis of the determined actual vehicle actuator

- 6 -

operation control input.

[0009] Further, in the controller of a vehicle in accordance with the present invention, the actual vehicle actuator operation control input determining means

5 comprises a means which determines a feedback control input for manipulating the driving/braking force of each wheel for bringing the first state amount error close to zero on the basis of at least the calculated first state amount error, a means which determines a feedforward
10 control input defining the feedforward target value of the driving/braking force of each wheel on the basis of at least the detected drive operation input, and a means which determines, on a k-th wheel, which is one or more particular wheels of the plurality of wheels, a k-th
15 elliptic function which is an elliptic function defining a correlation between a driving/braking force component and a lateral force component of a road surface reaction force which may act on the k-th wheel from a road surface on the basis of the detected or estimated road surface reaction
20 force of the k-th wheel and the estimated friction characteristic, and a means which determines a driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel such that a predetermined first required condition related to a relationship among at least a road
25 surface reaction force that may act on the k-th wheel according to the determined k-th elliptic function, the feedforward control input of the k-th wheel, the feedback

- 7 -

control input of the k-th wheel, and the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel is satisfied (a first invention).

[0010] Alternatively, the actual vehicle actuator

5 operation control input determining means comprises:

a means which determines a feedback control input for manipulating the driving/braking force of each wheel for bringing the first state amount error close to zero on the basis of at least the calculated first state amount
10 error;

a means which determines a feedforward control input defining a feedforward target value of the driving/braking force of each wheel on the basis of at least the detected drive operation input;

15 a means which determines, on a k-th wheel, which is one or more particular wheels of the plurality of wheels, a k-th elliptic function which is an elliptic function defining a correlation between a driving/braking force component and a lateral force component of a road surface
20 reaction force which may act on the k-th wheel from a road surface on the basis of the detected or estimated road surface reaction force of the k-th wheel and the estimated friction characteristic; and

a means which defines a predetermined required
25 condition related to a relationship among at least a road surface reaction force that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to the determined k-th

- 8 -

elliptic function, the feedforward control input of the k-th wheel, the feedback control input of the k-th wheel, and a driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel as a first required condition, defines a
5 predetermined required condition related to a relationship between a driving/braking force at the generation of a maximum moment, which is a driving/braking force component of a road surface reaction force that is maximized in the same direction as the direction of a moment in the yaw
10 direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of the actual vehicle due to the manipulation of the driving/braking force of the k-th wheel based on the feedback control input of the k-th wheel by a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity
15 point of the actual vehicle by a road surface reaction force, in the road surface reaction force that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to at least the determined k-th elliptic function, and the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-
20 th wheel as a second required condition, defines the second required condition out of the first required condition and the second required condition as a priority condition, and determines the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel such that at
25 least either one of the first required condition and the second required condition is satisfied (a second invention).

- 9 -

[0011] Alternatively, the actual vehicle actuator operation control input determining means comprises a means which determines a feedback control input for manipulating the driving/braking force of each wheel for bringing the first state amount error close to zero on the basis of at least the calculated first state amount error; a means which determines a feedforward control input defining the feedforward target value of the driving/braking force of each wheel on the basis of at least the detected drive operation input; a means which determines, on a k-th wheel, which is one or more particular wheels of the plurality of wheels, a k-th elliptic function which is an elliptic function defining a correlation between a driving/braking force component and a lateral force component of a road surface reaction force that may act on the k-th wheel from a road surface on the basis of the detected or estimated road surface reaction force of the k-th wheel and the estimated friction characteristic; and a means which defines a predetermined required condition related to a relationship among at least a road surface reaction force that may act on the k-th wheel according to the determined k-th elliptic function, the feedforward control input of the k-th wheel, the feedback control input of the k-th wheel, and a driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel as a first required condition, defines a predetermined required condition related to a relationship

- 10 -

between the feedforward target value defined by the
determined feedforward control input of the k-th wheel and
a driving/braking force manipulation control input as a
third required condition, defines the third required
5 condition out of the first required condition and the
third required condition as a priority condition, and
determines the driving/braking force manipulation control
input of the k-th wheel such that at least either one of
the first required condition and the third required
10 condition is satisfied (a third invention).

[0012] Alternatively, the actual vehicle actuator
operation control input determining means comprises a
means which determines a feedback control input for
manipulating the driving/braking force of each wheel for
15 bringing the first state amount error close to zero on the
basis of at least the calculated first state amount error,
a means which determines a feedforward control input
defining the feedforward target value of the
driving/braking force of each wheel on the basis of at
20 least the detected drive operation input, a means which
determines, on a k-th wheel, which is one or more
particular wheels of the plurality of wheels, a k-th
elliptic function which is an elliptic function defining a
correlation between a driving/braking force component and
25 a lateral force component of a road surface reaction force
which may act on the k-th wheel from a road surface on the
basis of the detected or estimated road surface reaction

- 11 -

force of the k-th wheel and the estimated friction characteristic, and a means which defines a predetermined required condition related to a relationship among at least a road surface reaction force that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to the determined k-th elliptic function, the feedforward control input of the k-th wheel, the feedback control input of the k-th wheel, and a driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel as a first required condition, defines a predetermined required condition related to a relationship between a driving/braking force at the generation of a maximum moment, which is a driving/braking force component of a road surface reaction force that is maximized in the same direction as the direction of a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of the actual vehicle due to the manipulation of the driving/braking force of the k-th wheel based on the feedback control input of the k-th wheel by a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of the actual vehicle by a road surface reaction force, in the road surface reaction force that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to at least the determined k-th elliptic function, and the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel as a second required condition, defines a predetermined required condition related to a relationship between the feedforward target

- 12 -

value defined by the determined feedforward control input of the k-th wheel and the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel as a third required condition, defines the third required condition out of the first required condition, the second required condition, and the third required condition as a highest-rank priority condition, defines the second required condition as the next-tank priority condition, and determines the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel such that at least one of the first required condition, the second required condition, and the third required condition is satisfied (a fourth invention).

[0013] According to the first invention to the fourth invention, the actual vehicle actuator operation control input including the driving/braking force operation control input is determined on the basis of at least the detected drive manipulated variable and the calculated first state amount error.

[0014] At this time, according to the first invention, at least the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel is determined such that the predetermined first required condition concerning the relationship among the road surface reaction force that may be applied from the road surface to the k-th wheel according to the k-th elliptic function, the feedforward control input of the k-th wheel, the feedback control

- 13 -

input of the k-th wheel, and the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel is satisfied.

[0015] Here, the feedback control input of the k-th wheel is a feedback control input for bringing the first state

5 amount error close to zero, that is, for bringing the difference between the first actual state amount of a predetermined motion including a rotational motion in the yaw direction of the vehicle and a first reference state amount close to zero. Further, the feedforward control

10 input of the k-th wheel is a control input based on at least a detected value or an estimated value of the drive manipulated variable (a control input not dependent on the first state amount error). Hence, basically, the

operation of the actuator device may be controlled such
15 that the driving/braking force obtained by adjusting, on the basis of a feedback control input, the feedforward target value of a driving/braking force defined by a feedforward control input of the k-th wheel is applied to the k-th wheel from a road surface.

20 [0016] Meanwhile, regarding a road surface reaction force that may be applied from a road surface to the k-th wheel, the correlation between the driving/braking force component and the lateral force component of the road surface reaction force that may be applied from a road
25 surface to the k-th wheel is approximately expressed by an elliptic function even when the characteristic of friction between the k-th wheel and the road surface remains

- 14 -

constant. More specifically, if a point that expresses a set of the driving/braking force component and the lateral force component of the road surface reaction force that may be applied from a road surface to the k-th wheel is described, using the driving/braking force component and the lateral force component as coordinate axes, then the point approximately becomes a point on an elliptic curve. In other words, the set of the driving/braking force component and the lateral force component of the road surface reaction force that may be applied from the road surface to the k-th wheel changes approximately along the elliptic function. Further, a moment in the yaw direction about the center-of-gravity point of the vehicle is generated primarily by the resultant force of the driving/braking force component and the lateral force component. In addition, by detecting or estimating the road surface reaction force of the k-th wheel, the elliptic function can be identified on the basis of the detected value or the estimated value.

[0017]- Hence, according to the first invention, the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel is determined such that the predetermined first required condition concerning the relationship among the road surface reaction force that may be applied from a road surface to the k-th wheel according to at least the determined k-th elliptic function, the feedforward control input of the k-th wheel, the feedback control input of the

k-th wheel, and the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel is satisfied.

[0018] With this arrangement, according to the first invention, it is possible to determine the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel such that the requirement (control requirement) concerning the driving/braking force indicated by the feedforward control input and the feedback control input of the k-th wheel is satisfied as much as possible while considering the characteristics of a road surface reaction force that may actually act on the k-th wheel. As a result, the operation of an actuator device can be controlled such that a first state amount error is brought close to zero with high stability while taking the operation of the actuator device based on the detected or estimated drive manipulated variable as the reference.

[0019] Furthermore, the aforesaid second invention takes into account the second required condition in addition to the first required condition. More specifically, in the second invention, a predetermined required condition concerning a relationship between a driving/braking force at the generation of a maximum moment, which is a driving/braking force component of a road surface reaction force that is maximized in the same direction as the direction of a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of an actual vehicle due to the manipulation of the driving/braking force of the k-th

- 16 -

wheel based on the feedback control input of the k-th wheel by a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of the actual vehicle by a road surface reaction force, in the road surface reaction force that may be applied from the road surface to the k-th wheel according to at least the determined k-th elliptic function, and the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel is defined as a second required condition. Further, the second required condition out of the first required condition, which is the same as that of the first invention, and the second required condition is defined as a priority condition (the required condition to be given priority over the first required condition), and the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel is determined such that at least one of the first required condition and the second required condition is satisfied. In other words, the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel is determined such that the first required condition is satisfied in a range in which the second required condition can be satisfied.

[0020] Here, the second required condition means a requirement that, regarding the direction of the moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of an actual vehicle due to the manipulation of the driving/braking force of the k-th wheel by the feedback control input of the k-th wheel, the total moment in the

- 17 -

yaw direction about the center-of-gravity point of the actual vehicle should be changed in that direction in order to approximate the first state amount error to zero. In this case, if the total driving/braking force including the manipulated variable of the driving/braking force of the k-th wheel attributable to a feedback control input of the k-th wheel is in the same direction as that of the driving/braking force at the generation of a maximum moment, and if the absolute value of the total driving/braking force exceeds the absolute value of the driving/braking force at the generation of the maximum moment, then the lateral force of the k-th wheel will be excessively small or the absolute value of a slip ratio of the k-th wheel will be excessively large.

[0021] Therefore, according to the second invention, the predetermined required condition related to the relationship between a driving/braking force at the generation of a maximum moment and a driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel is defined as the second required condition, and the second required condition out of the first required condition and the second required condition is defined as a priority condition. Then, the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel is determined such that at least one of the first required condition and the second required condition is satisfied.

[0022] Thus, the second invention makes it possible to

determine the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel such that a requirement related to a driving/braking force indicated by a feedforward control input and a feedback control input of the k-th wheel is satisfied as much as possible while preventing a lateral force actually acting on the k-th wheel from becoming excessively small or the absolute value of a slip ratio of the k-th wheel from becoming excessively large.

[0023] Further, the aforesaid third invention considers the third required condition in addition to the first required condition. More specifically, the third invention defines a predetermined required condition related to the relationship between the feedforward target value specified by a feedforward control input of the k-th wheel and a driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel as the third required condition. Then, the third required condition out of the first required condition, which is the same as that of the first invention, and the third required condition is defined as a priority condition (a required condition to be given priority over the first required condition). Then, the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel is determined such that at least one of the first required condition and the third required condition is satisfied. In other words, the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel is determined

such that the first required condition is satisfied in a range in which the third required condition is satisfied.

[0024] Here, regarding the third required condition, the feedforward control input of the k-th wheel is determined on the basis of at least the drive manipulated variable indicative of a driver's request. Therefore, especially when the feedforward target value of a driving/braking force of the k-th wheel specified by the feedforward control input is a driving/braking force in a braking direction, it is considered desirable to determine the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel such that a driving/braking force having a magnitude of the required driving/braking force or more acts on the k-th wheel.

[0025] Hence, the third invention defines a predetermined required condition related to a relationship between a feedforward target value specified by a feedforward control input of the k-th wheel and a driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel as a third required condition, defines the third required condition out of the first required condition and the third required condition as a priority required condition, and then determines the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel such that at least one of the first required condition and the third required condition is satisfied.

[0026] Thus, the third invention makes it possible to

determine the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel such that a requirement (control requirement) related to a driving/braking force indicated by a feedforward control input and a feedback control input of the k-th wheel is satisfied as much as possible while causing a driving/braking force (especially a driving/braking force in the braking direction) which conforms to a request of the driver of the vehicle as much as possible to act on the k-th wheel.

[0027] Further, the aforesaid fourth invention takes into account the second required condition and the third required condition in addition to the first required condition. More specifically, according to the fourth invention, the third required condition out of the first required condition, the second required condition, and the third required condition described above is defined as a priority condition of the highest rank, and the second required condition is defined as a priority condition of the next rank. Then, the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel is determined such that at least one of the first required condition, the second required condition, and the third required condition is satisfied.

[0028] Thus, the fourth invention makes it possible to determine the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel such that a requirement (control requirement) related to a driving/braking force

- 21 -

indicated by a feedforward control input and a feedback control input of the k-th wheel is satisfied as much as possible while satisfying a requirement that a driving/braking force (especially a driving/braking force in the braking direction) which conforms to a request of the driver of the vehicle as much as possible act on the k-th wheel and that a lateral force which actually acts on the k-th wheel is prevented from becoming excessively small or the absolute value of a slip ratio of the k-th wheel is prevented from becoming excessively large as much as possible.

[0029] Thus, according to the first to the fourth inventions described above, it is possible to properly control a motion of an actual vehicle to a desired motion, while properly considering the characteristics of a road surface reaction force acting from a road surface to a wheel.

[0030] In the first to the fourth inventions described above, the feedback control inputs include, for example, a control input that defines the target value of the manipulated variable of the driving/braking force of each wheel. In this case, in each of the first to the fourth inventions, in the case where the total sum of the target value of the manipulated variable of a driving/braking force specified by a feedback control input of the k-th wheel and the feedforward target value of a driving/braking force specified by a feedforward control

- 22 -

input of the k-th wheel is defined as an unlimited k-th wheel required driving/braking force, the aforesaid first required condition is preferably a condition that the target driving/braking force specified by the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel takes a value in a range of the values of the driving/braking force components of the road surface reaction forces that may act from a road surface onto the k-th wheel according to the k-th elliptic function and that the absolute value of a difference from the unlimited k-th wheel required driving/braking force is minimized (a fifth invention, a sixth invention, a seventh invention, and an eighth invention).

[0031] According to the fifth to the eighth inventions described above, the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel is determined such that the target driving/braking force specified by the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel takes a value in a range of the values of the driving/braking force components of the road surface reaction forces that may act from a road surface onto the k-th wheel according to the k-th elliptic function and that the absolute value of a difference from the unlimited k-th wheel required driving/braking force is minimized. Hence, the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel can be determined such that the requirement (control requirement) related to a

- 23 -

driving/braking force indicated by a feedforward control input and a feedback control input of the k-th wheel is ideally satisfied, while properly considering the characteristics of a road surface reaction force acting on the k-th wheel.

[0032] Alternatively, in the first to the fourth inventions described above, according to another example of the feedback control input, there is a control input that defines the target value of a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of an actual vehicle caused by the manipulation of the driving/braking force of each wheel by the feedback control input. In this case, in each of the first to the fourth inventions described above, in the case where the total sum of the target values of a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of an actual vehicle by a road surface reaction force which has a driving/braking force component in a road surface reaction force that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to the k-th elliptic function, the driving/braking force component leading to a minimum absolute value of the difference from the feedforward target value of a driving/braking force specified by a feedforward control input of the k-th wheel, and a moment in the yaw direction specified by a feedback control input of the k-th wheel is defined as an unlimited k-th wheel required moment, the first required condition is

- 24 -

preferably a condition that the target driving/braking force specified by a driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel takes a value in a range of the values of the driving/braking force components of road surface reaction forces that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to the k-th elliptic function and that the absolute value of the difference between the moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of an actual vehicle by a road surface reaction force having a driving/braking force component equivalent to a target driving/braking force of the k-th wheel among the road surface reaction forces that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to the k-th elliptic function, and the unlimited k-th wheel required moment is minimum (a ninth invention, a tenth invention, an eleventh invention, and a twelfth invention).

[0033] According to the ninth to the twelfth inventions described above, the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel is determined such that the target driving/braking force specified by a driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel takes a value in a range of the values of the driving/braking force components of road surface reaction forces that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to the k-th elliptic function and that the absolute value of the difference between the moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point

of an actual vehicle by a road surface reaction force having a driving/braking force component equivalent to a target driving/braking force of the k-th wheel among the road surface reaction forces that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to the k-th elliptic function, and the unlimited k-th wheel required moment (this corresponds to the total requirement of the feedforward control input and the feedback control input) is minimum. Hence, the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel can be determined such that a requirement (control requirement) related to a driving/braking force indicated by a feedforward control input and a feedback control input of the k-th wheel is ideally satisfied, while properly considering the characteristics of a road surface reaction force acting on the k-th wheel.

[0034] Further, in the aforesaid second invention (or an invention which is subordinate thereto) using the second required condition, the second required condition is preferably a condition that the direction of a target k-th wheel driving/braking force, which is a target driving/braking force specified by a driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel and the direction of the k-th wheel driving/braking force at the generation of a maximum moment are opposite from each other, or the absolute value of the target k-th wheel driving/braking force is not more than the absolute value

- 26 -

of the k-th wheel driving/braking force at the generation of a maximum moment (a thirteenth invention). Further, in the fourth invention (or an invention subordinate thereto) also, a technical matter equivalent to the thirteenth invention is preferably adopted (a fourteenth invention).

[0035] According to the thirteenth invention and the fourteenth invention, a target driving/braking force specified by a driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel is in the same direction as a k-th wheel driving/braking force at the generation of a maximum moment, and the absolute value of the target driving/braking force does not exceed the absolute value of the k-th wheel driving/braking force at the generation of a maximum moment, thus making it possible to determine the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel such that the first state amount error can be approximated to zero, while preventing a lateral force which actually acts on the k-th wheel from becoming excessively small or the absolute value of a slip ratio of the k-th wheel from becoming excessively large.

[0036] Further, in the third invention (or an invention subordinate thereto) using the third required condition, the third required condition is preferably a condition that, in the case where a target k-th wheel driving/braking force, which is a target driving/braking force specified by the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel, is a driving/braking

- 27 -

force in the braking direction, and a feedforward target value of a driving/braking force specified by a feedforward control input of the k-th wheel is a driving/braking force in the braking direction, the absolute value of the target k-th wheel driving/braking force is not less than the absolute value of a feedforward target value of a driving/braking force of the k-th wheel (a fifteenth invention). Further, preferably, the fourth invention (or an invention subordinate thereto) also adopts a technical matter equivalent to the fifteenth invention (a sixteenth invention).

[0037] According to the fifteenth invention and the sixteenth invention, the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel can be determined such that the absolute value of a driving/braking force in the braking direction that acts on the k-th wheel does not become smaller than the absolute value of a driving/braking force in the braking direction required by a driver.

[0038] Preferably, each of the first to the fourth inventions explained above (or an invention subordinate to each thereof) is equipped with a vehicle model established beforehand as a model that expresses the dynamic characteristics of the vehicle and a vehicle model operation control input determining means which determines a vehicle model operation control input for manipulating a motion which includes at least a rotational motion in the

- 28 -

yaw direction of a vehicle on the vehicle model on the basis of at least the calculated first state amount error such that the first state amount error is approximated to zero, wherein the reference state amount determining means
5 is a means which inputs at least the detected drive operation input and the determined vehicle model operation control input into the vehicle model to determine a first state amount related to the predetermined motion including the rotational motion in the yaw direction of the vehicle
10 on the vehicle model as the first reference state amount (a seventeenth invention, an eighteenth invention, a nineteenth invention, and a twentieth invention).

[0039] The seventeenth to the twentieth inventions described above not only control the operation of an
15 actuator device of an actual vehicle such that the first state amount error approximates to zero but also operate the vehicle on the vehicle model such that a first state amount error approximates to zero. Hence, even if the first actual state amount is indicative of moving away
20 from a first reference state amount due to an estimation error of the friction characteristics, a detection error or an estimation error of a side slip angle of a wheel, or a modeling error of the vehicle model, or the restriction on the operation of an actuator device by a limiter, or
25 the like, a first reference state amount can be brought close to an actual first state amount. This arrangement makes it possible to prevent the first state amount error

- 29 -

from becoming excessively large due to a variety of disturbance factors or changes therein. As a result, the stability of the control of the operation of an actuator device of an actual vehicle can be enhanced. Therefore, the seventeenth to the twentieth inventions make it possible to enhance the robustness against disturbance factors or changes therein, thus properly controlling the motions of a vehicle.

[0040] Incidentally, in the seventeenth to the twentieth inventions, vehicle model operation control inputs include, for example, a virtual external force (a moment or a translational force) additionally applied to the vehicle on the vehicle model. If the first state amount includes a state amount related to a rotational motion in the yaw direction of a vehicle, then the virtual external force preferably includes a moment component in the yaw direction.

Best Mode for Carrying Out the Invention

[0041] The following will explain embodiments of the controller of a vehicle in accordance with the present invention.

[0042] First, referring to Fig. 1, a schematic construction of a vehicle in the embodiments in the present description will be explained. Fig. 1 is a block diagram illustrating the schematic construction of the vehicle. A vehicle illustrated in the embodiments in the present description is a car provided with four wheels

- 30 -

(two wheels each at the front and the rear of the vehicle). The construction itself of the car may be a publicly known one, so that detailed illustration and explanation will be omitted in the present description.

5 [0043] As shown in Fig. 1, a vehicle 1 (car) is provided with a driving/braking device 3A (a driving/braking system) that imparts a rotational driving force (a rotational force that provides an impelling force for the vehicle 1) to driving wheels among four wheels W1, W2, W3,
10 and W4, or imparts a braking force (a rotational force that provides a braking force for the vehicle 1) to each of the wheels W1 to W4, a steering device 3B (a steering system) for controlling steering control wheels among the four wheels W1 to S4, and a suspension device 3C (a
15 suspension system) that resiliently supports a vehicle body 1B on the four wheels W1 to W4, as with a publicly known regular car. The wheels W1, W2, W3, and W4 are a front left wheel, a front right wheel, a rear left wheel, and a rear right wheel, respectively, of the vehicle 1.
20 Further, the driving wheel and the steering control wheel are the two front wheels W1 and W2 in the embodiments to be explained in the present description. Hence, the rear wheels W3 and W4 are driven wheels and non-steering-control wheels.

25 [0044] However, the driving wheels may alternatively be the two rear wheels W3 and W4 or both the front wheels W1, W2 and the rear wheels W3, W4 (the four wheels W1 through

- 31 -

W4). Further, the steering control wheels may include not only the two front wheels W1 and W2 but the rear wheels W3 and W4 also.

[0045] These devices 3A, 3B and 3C have functions for manipulating the motions of the vehicle 1. For example, the driving/braking device 3A has a function for mainly manipulating the motions in advancing directions of the vehicle 1 (positions, velocities, accelerations and the like in the advancing directions of the vehicle 1). The steering device 3B has a function for mainly manipulating the rotational motions in the yaw direction of the vehicle 1 (postures, angular velocities, angular accelerations and the like in the yaw direction of the vehicle 1). The suspension device 3C has a function for primarily manipulating the motions in the pitch direction and the roll direction of a vehicle body 1B of the vehicle 1 (postures and the like in the pitch direction and the roll direction of the vehicle body 1B of the vehicle 1) or the motions in the vertical directions of the vehicle body 1B (mainly a height of the vehicle body 1B from a road surface (a vertical position of the vehicle body 1B relative to the wheels W1 to W4)). Incidentally, a "posture" of the vehicle 1 or the vehicle body 1B means a spatial orientation in the present description.

[0046] Supplementally, in general, side slips of the wheels W1 to W4 occur when the vehicle 1 makes turns or the like. The side slips are subjected to the influences

- 32 -

of the steering angles of the steering control wheels of the vehicle 1, a yaw rate (an angular velocity in the yaw direction) of the vehicle 1, the driving/braking forces of the wheels W1 to W4, and the like. For this reason, the driving/braking device 3A and the steering device 3B have functions for manipulating the translational motions in lateral directions (right/left directions) of the vehicle 1. Incidentally, the "driving/braking force" of a wheel means a translational force component, which is in a longitudinal direction of the wheel, of a road surface reaction force acting on the wheel from a road surface (more specifically, in the direction of a line of intersection between a rotational plane of the wheel (a plane which passes the central point of the wheel and which is orthogonal to the rotational axis of the wheel) and a road surface or a horizontal plane). Further, in the road surface reaction force, a translational force component in the direction of the width of a wheel (the direction parallel to the rotational axis of the wheel) is referred to as a "lateral force." In the road surface reaction force, a translational force component in a direction perpendicular to a road surface or a horizontal plane is referred to as a "ground contact load."

[0047] Although not illustrated in detail, more

specifically, the driving/braking device 3A is equipped with a driving system constructed of an engine (an internal-combustion engine) serving as a motive power

- 33 -

generating source of the vehicle 1 (an impellent force
generating source of the vehicle 1) and a motive power
transmitting system for transmitting an output (a
rotational driving force) of the engine to the driving
5 wheels among the wheels W1 to W4, and a braking device (a
braking system) that imparts braking forces to the wheels
W1 to W4. The motive power transmitting system includes a
transmission, a differential gear, and the like.

[0048] The vehicle 1 to be explained in the embodiments
10 is equipped with an engine as a motive power generating
source; however, the vehicle 1 may alternatively be a
vehicle provided with an engine and an electric motor as
motive power generating sources (a so-called parallel type
hybrid vehicle) or a vehicle provided with an electric
15 motor as a motive power generating source (a so-called
electric car or a series type hybrid vehicle).

[0049] Further, a steering wheel (driver's wheel), an
accelerator (gas) pedal, a brake pedal, a shift lever, and
the like functioning as manipulating devices 5 (man-
20 induced manipulating devices) operated by a driver to
steer the vehicle 1 (car) are provided in a vehicle
interior of the vehicle 1. The illustration of the
elements of the manipulating devices 5 is omitted.

[0050] The steering wheel among the manipulating devices
25 5 is related to an operation of the steering device 3B.
More specifically, as the steering wheel is rotationally
manipulated, the steering device 3B is operated in

- 34 -

response thereto, thus steering the steering control wheels W1 and W2 among the wheels W1 to W4.

[0051] The accelerator (gas) pedal, the brake pedal, and the shift lever among the manipulating devices 5 are related to the operations of the driving/braking device 3A. More specifically, the opening of a throttle valve provided in the engine changes according to a manipulated variable (a depression amount) of the accelerator (gas) pedal so as to adjust an intake air volume and a fuel injection amount of the engine (consequently an output of the engine). Further, the braking device is operated according to a manipulated variable (a depression amount) of a brake pedal, and a braking torque based on the manipulated variable of the brake pedal is imparted to the wheels W1 to W4. Further, manipulating the shift lever changes an operation state of the transmission, such as a change gear ratio of the transmission, thus effecting the adjustment or the like of the driving torque transmitted from the engine to the driving wheels.

[0052] The drive manipulation states of the manipulating devices 5, such as the steering wheel operated by the driver (the steerer of the vehicle 1) are detected by appropriate sensors, which are not shown. Hereinafter, detection values (detection outputs of the sensors) of the drive manipulation states will be referred to as drive operation inputs. The drive operation inputs include the detection values of a steering angle, which is a

- 35 -

rotational angle of the steering wheel, an accelerator (gas) pedal manipulated variable, which is a manipulated variable of the accelerator (gas) pedal, a brake pedal manipulated variable, which is a manipulated variable of the brake pedal, and a shift lever position, which is a manipulation position of the shift lever. The sensors that output the drive operation inputs correspond to the drive manipulated variable detecting means in the present invention.

[0053] In the embodiments in the present description, the driving/braking device 3A and the steering device 3B described above are adapted to permit active control of the operations thereof (consequently the motions of the vehicle 1) in response to not only the drive operation inputs but also factors other than the drive operation inputs (e.g., a motion state of the vehicle 1 or an environmental condition). Here, "to permit active control" means that the operations of the devices 3A and 3B can be controlled into the operations obtained by correcting basic operations based on the drive operation inputs (basic desired operations determined on the basis of drive operation inputs).

[0054] More specifically, the driving/braking device 3A is a driving/braking device having a function that makes it possible to actively control the difference or the ratio between a driving/braking force of the left wheels W1, W3 and a driving/braking force of the right wheels W2,

- 36 -

W4 on at least one of the pair of the front wheels W1, W2 and the pair of the rear wheels W3, W4 through the intermediary of actuators, such as a hydraulic actuator, an electric motor, and an electromagnetic control valve, provided in the driving/braking device 3A (hereinafter, the control function will be referred to as the right/left motive power distribution control function).

[0055] To be more specific, according to the embodiments in the present description, the driving/braking device 3A is a driving/braking device capable of actively controlling the driving/braking forces to be applied to the wheels W1 to W4 (specifically, the driving/braking forces in the braking direction of the vehicle 1) by operating a braking device through the intermediary of actuators provided in the braking device (a driving/braking device capable of controlling the driving/braking forces to be applied to the wheels W1 to W4 by the braking device by increasing or decreasing the basic driving/braking forces determined on the basis of the manipulated variables of the brake pedal). Hence, the driving/braking device 3A is a driving/braking device capable of actively controlling, through the intermediary of the actuators, the difference or the ratio between a driving/braking force of the left wheels W1, W3 and a driving/braking force of the right wheels W2, W4 by the braking device on both pairs, namely, the pair of the front wheels W1, W2 and the pair of the rear wheels W3, W4

- 37 -

(a driving/braking device that has the right/left motive power distribution control function for both pairs of the pair of the front wheels W1, W2 and the pair of the rear wheels W3, W4).

5 [0056] The driving/braking device 3A may have a function that permits active control, through the intermediary of actuators provided in the driving system, of the difference or the ratio between the driving/braking forces to be applied to the front wheels W1 and W2, which are
10 driving wheels, by operating the driving system of the driving/braking device 3A, in addition to the function for actively controlling the driving/braking forces of the wheels W1 to W4 by operating the braking device.

[0057] As the driving/braking device 3A having the
15 right/left motive power distribution control function as described above, a publicly known one may be used.

[0058] Supplementally, the driving/braking device 3A having the right/left motive power distribution control function as described above will have a function for
20 actively manipulating a rotational motion in the yaw direction of the vehicle 1 or a translational motion in the lateral direction by the control function thereof.

[0059] Incidentally, the driving/braking device 3A includes an actuator for generating braking torque for the
25 braking device, an actuator for driving a throttle valve of the engine, an actuator for driving a fuel injection valve, an actuator for performing speed change drive of

- 38 -

the transmission, and the like in addition to the actuators associated with the right/left motive power distribution control function.

[0060] Further, the steering device 3B is a steering
5 device capable of secondarily steering the front wheels W1 and W2 by an actuator, such as an electric motor, as necessary, in addition to, for example, a function for mechanically steering the front wheels W1 and W2, which are steering control wheels, through the intermediary of a
10 steering mechanism, such as a rack-and-pinion, according to a rotational operation of the steering wheel (a steering device capable of controlling the steering angle of the front wheels W1 and W2 by increasing or decreasing the steering angle mechanically determined on the basis of
15 the rotational angle of the steering wheel).

Alternatively, the steering device 3B is a steering device which steers the front wheels W1 and W2 by using only a driving force of an actuator (a so-called steering-by-wire steering device). Therefore, the steering device 3B is a
20 steering device capable of actively controlling the steering angle of the front wheels W1 and W2 through the intermediary of an actuator (hereinafter referred to as an active steering device).

[0061] If the steering device 3B is an active steering
25 device which secondarily steers the steering control wheels by an actuator in addition to mechanically steering the steering control wheels according to a rotational

- 39 -

operation of the steering wheel (hereinafter, such an active steering device will be referred to as an actuator-assisted steering device), then the resultant angle of the steering angle of a steering control wheel mechanically
5 determined by a rotational operation of the steering wheel and a steering angle based on an operation of an actuator (a correction amount of a steering angle) will be the steering angle of the steering control wheel.

[0062] If the steering device 3B is an active steering
10 device which steers the steering control wheels W1 and W2 by using only a driving force of an actuator (hereinafter, such an active steering device will be referred to as an actuator-driven type steering device), then a target value of the steering angle of the steering control wheels is
15 determined on the basis of at least a detection value of the steering angle and the actuator is controlled such that the actual steering angle of the steering control wheels takes the target value.

[0063] As the steering device 3B capable of actively
20 controlling the steering angle of the steering control wheels W1 and W2 through the intermediary of an actuator (the active steering device), a publicly known one may be used.

[0064] The steering device 3B in the embodiments in the
25 present description is an active steering device capable of actively controlling the steering angle of the front wheels W1 and W2 through the intermediary of an actuator;

- 40 -

alternatively, however, the steering device 3B may be a type that performs only the mechanical steering of the front wheels W1 and W2 on the basis of a rotational operation of the steering wheel (hereinafter referred to as a mechanical type steering device). Further, in a vehicle having all wheels W1 to W4 as steering control wheels, the steering device may be capable of actively controlling the steering angles of both the front wheels W1, W2 and the rear wheels W3, W4 through the intermediary of actuators. Alternatively, the steering device may be a type which steers the front wheels W1 and W2 on the basis of a rotational operation of the steering wheel only by a mechanical means, such as a rack-and-pinion, and which is capable of actively controlling only the steering angles of the rear wheels W3 and W4 through the intermediary of an actuator.

[0065] According to the embodiments in the present description, the suspension device 3C is a suspension device which passively operates on the basis of, for example, a motion of the vehicle 1.

[0066] However, the suspension device 3C may be a suspension device capable of variably controlling, for example, a damping force, hardness or the like of a damper interposed between the vehicle body 1B and the wheels W1 to W4 through the intermediary of an actuator, such as an electromagnetic control valve or an electric motor. Alternatively, the suspension device 3C may be a

- 41 -

suspension device capable of directly controlling a stroke (an amount of vertical displacement between the vehicle body 1B and the wheels W1 to W4) of a suspension (a mechanical portion, such as a spring, of the suspension device 3C) or a vertical expanding/contracting force of the suspension generated between the vehicle body 1B and the wheels W1 to W4 by a hydraulic cylinder or a pneumatic cylinder (a so-called electronically controlled suspension). If the suspension device 3C is a suspension device capable of controlling the damping force or the hardness of the damper and the stroke or the expanding/contracting force of the suspension as described above (hereinafter referred to as the active suspension device), then the suspension device 3C permits active control of the operations thereof.

[0067] In the following explanation, among the driving/braking device 3A, the steering device 3B, and the suspension device 3C, those devices capable of actively controlling the operations as described above may be referred to generically as actuator devices 3. In the embodiments in the present description, the actuator devices 3 include the driving/braking device 3A and the steering device 3B. If the suspension device 3C is an active suspension device, then the suspension device 3C is also included in the actuator devices 3.

[0068] Further, the vehicle 1 is provided with a controller 10 which determines a manipulated variable of

- 42 -

an actuator (a control input to the actuator; hereinafter referred to as an actuator manipulated variable) provided in each of the actuator devices 3 on the basis of the above-mentioned drive operation inputs and the like, and controls the operation of each of the actuator devices 3 on the basis of the actuator manipulated variable. This controller 10 is constituted of an electronic circuit unit that includes a microcomputer and the like, and it receives the drive operation inputs from sensors of the manipulating devices 5 and also the detection values of the state amounts of the vehicle 1, such as a traveling velocity, a yaw rate and the like of the vehicle 1, and information on traveling environments and the like of the vehicle 1 from various sensors, which are not shown. Then, based on those inputs, the controller 10 sequentially determines actuator manipulated variables at a predetermined control processing cycle so as to sequentially control the operations of the actuator devices 3.

[0069] The above has described the general schematic construction of the vehicle 1 (the car) of the embodiments in the present description. This schematic construction will be the same in all embodiments to be explained below.

[0070] Supplementally, according to the embodiments in the present description, among the driving/braking device 3A, the steering device 3B, and the suspension device 3C described above, those corresponding to the actuator

- 43 -

devices in the present invention (the actuator devices to which the present invention will be applied to carry out operation control) will be the driving/braking device 3A or the driving/braking device 3A and the steering device 3B. Further, the controller 10 corresponds to the actuator device controlling means in the present invention.

[0071] Further, the controller 10 implements a variety of means in the present invention by the control processing function thereof.

[0072]

[Reference Example 1]

Before explaining the embodiments of the present invention, reference example 1 related to the embodiments will be explained below in order to make it easy to understand the embodiments. Fig. 2 is a functional block diagram showing an overview of an entire control processing function of a controller 10 in the present reference example 1. In the explanation from now on, a real vehicle 1 will be referred to as an actual vehicle 1. Supplementally, the present reference example 1 differs from a first embodiment or a second embodiment, which will be discussed later, only in the processing by an actuator operation target value synthesizer 24. And, the present reference example 1 is the same as the first embodiment or the second embodiment except for the different portion. Therefore, the part of the following explanation related to the present reference example 1 except for the detailed

- 44 -

explanation of the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24 will serve also as the explanation of the first embodiment or the second embodiment.

[0073] The portion excluding the actual vehicle 1 in Fig.

5 2 (more precisely, the portion excluding the actual vehicle 1 and sensors included in a sensor/estimator 12, which will be discussed later) corresponds to the primary control processing function of the controller 10. The actual vehicle 1 in Fig. 2 is provided with the
10 driving/braking device 3A, the steering device 3B, and the suspension device 3C described above.

[0074] As illustrated, the controller 10 is equipped with, as its main processing function components, the

sensor/estimator 12, a reference manipulated variable
15 determiner 14, a reference dynamic characteristics model 16, a subtracter 18, a feedback distribution law (FB distribution law) 20, a feedforward law (FF law) 22, the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24, and an actuator drive control unit 26. The solid-line arrows in
20 Fig. 2 indicate primary inputs to the processing function components and the dashed-line arrows indicate secondary inputs to the processing function components.

[0075] The controller 10 carries out the processing by these processing function components at a predetermined
25 control processing cycle to sequentially determine actuator manipulated variables at each control processing cycle. Then, the controller 10 sequentially controls the

- 45 -

operations of the actuator devices 3 of the actual vehicle 1 on the basis of the actuator manipulated variables.

[0076] The following will present an outline of each processing function component of the controller 10 and an outline of the overall processing. Hereinafter, regarding the values of the variables determined at each control processing cycle of the controller 10, a value finally obtained by the processing at a current (a latest) control processing cycle will be referred to as a current time value, and a value finally obtained by the processing of a last time control processing cycle will be referred to as a last time value.

[0077] At each control processing cycle, the controller 10 first detects or estimates a state amount of the actual vehicle 1 or a state amount of a traveling environment of the actual vehicle 1 by the sensor/estimator 12. In the present reference example 1, detection targets or estimation targets of the sensor/estimator 12 include, for example, a yaw rate $\dot{\gamma}_{act}$, which is an angular velocity in the yaw direction of the actual vehicle 1, a traveling velocity V_{act} (ground speed) of the actual vehicle 1, a vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_{act} , which is a side slip angle of the center-of-gravity point of the actual vehicle 1, a front wheel side slip angle β_{f_act} , which is a side slip angle of the front wheels W1 and W2 of the actual vehicle 1, a rear wheel side slip angle β_{r_act} , which is a side slip angle of the rear

- 46 -

wheels W3 and W4 of the actual vehicle 1, a road surface reaction force (a driving/braking force, a lateral force, and a ground contact load), which is a reaction force acting on the wheels W1 to W4 of the actual vehicle 1 from
5 a road surface, a slip ratio of each of the wheels W1 to W4 of the actual vehicle 1, and a steering angle δf_{act} of the front wheels W1 and W2 of the actual vehicle 1.

[0078] Among these detection targets or estimation targets, the vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip
10 angle β_{act} is an angle formed by the vector of the traveling velocity V_{act} of the actual vehicle 1 with respect to the longitudinal direction of the actual vehicle 1 when the actual vehicle 1 is observed from above (on the horizontal plane). The front wheel side slip

15 angle βf_{act} is an angle formed by the advancing velocity vector of the front wheels W1 and W2 with respect to the longitudinal direction of the front wheels W1 and W2 when the actual vehicle 1 is observed from above (on the horizontal plane). The rear wheel side slip angle βr_{act}
20 is an angle formed by the advancing velocity vector of the rear wheels W3 and W4 with respect to the longitudinal direction of the rear wheels W3 and W4 when the actual vehicle 1 is observed from above (on the horizontal plane).

The steering angle δf_{act} is an angle formed by the
25 rotational surfaces of the front wheels W1 and W2 with respect to the longitudinal direction of the actual vehicle 1 when the actual vehicle 1 is observed from above

(on the horizontal plane).

[0079] The front wheel side slip angle β_{f_act} may be detected or estimated on each of the front wheels W1 and W2; alternatively, however, the side slip angle of one of the front wheels W1 and W2 may be detected or estimated representatively as β_{f_act} , or a mean value of the side slip angles of both may be detected or estimated as β_{f_act} . The same applies to the rear wheel side slip angle β_{r_act} .

[0080] Further, the estimation targets of the

sensor/estimator 12 include a coefficient of friction between the wheels W1 to W4 of the actual vehicle 1 and an actual road surface in contact therewith (hereinafter, an estimated value of the friction coefficient will be referred to as the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm}).

Preferably, the processing for estimating a friction coefficient includes filtering or the like of low-pass characteristics so as to restrain frequent fluctuation in the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} . In the present reference example, the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} is an estimated value of, for example, a representative value or a mean value of the coefficient of the friction between the wheels W1 to W4 and a road surface. Alternatively, however, the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} may be determined for each of the wheels W1 to W4 or the estimated values of the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} may be determined separately on the pair of the front wheels W1, W2 and the pair of the rear wheels W3, W4,

- 48 -

or separately on the pair of the front wheel W1 and the rear wheel W3 on the left side and the pair of the front wheel W2 and the rear wheel W4 on the right side.

[0081] The sensor/estimator 12 is equipped with various sensors mounted on the actual vehicle 1 to detect or estimate the above-mentioned detection targets or estimation targets. The sensors include, for example, a rate sensor for detecting angular velocities of the actual vehicle 1, an acceleration sensor for detecting accelerations in the longitudinal direction and the lateral direction of the actual vehicle 1, a velocity sensor for detecting the traveling velocity (ground speed) of the actual vehicle 1, a rotational velocity sensor for detecting the rotational velocities of the wheels W1 to W4 of the actual vehicle 1, and a force sensor for detecting road surface reaction forces acting on the wheels W1 to W4 of the actual vehicle 1 from a road surface.

[0082] In this case, for an estimation target that cannot be directly detected by a sensor installed in the actual vehicle 1 among the detection targets or the estimation targets, the sensor/estimator 12 estimates the estimation target by an observer or the like on the basis of a detection value of a state amount related to the estimation target or the value of an actuator manipulated variable determined by the controller 10 or a target value defining it. For instance, the vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_{act} is estimated on the basis of

- 49 -

mainly a detection value of the acceleration sensor
installed in the actual vehicle 1. Further, for example,
the friction coefficient is estimated by a publicly known
method on the basis of mainly a detection value of the
5 acceleration sensor.

[0083] Supplementally, the sensor/estimator 12 has a
function as an actual state amount grasping means in the
present invention. In the present reference example 1,
the type of a first state amount related to vehicle
10 motions uses a vehicle yaw rate and a vehicle center-of-
gravity point side slip angle. In this case, the yaw rate
has a meaning as a state amount related to the rotational
motions in the yaw direction of the vehicle, and the
vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle has a
15 meaning as a state amount related to the lateral
translational motions of the vehicle. Further, the yaw
rate γ_{act} and the vehicle center-of-gravity point side
slip angle β_{act} are detected or estimated by the
sensor/estimator 12 as a first actual state amount in the
20 present invention.

[0084] Further, the sensor/estimator 12 is provided with
a function as a friction characteristic estimating means
in the present invention by its function for estimating a
friction coefficient (determining μ_{estm}). Moreover, the
25 sensor/estimator 12 is provided with a function as an
actual road surface reaction force grasping means in the
present invention by its function for detecting or

- 50 -

estimating a road surface reaction force (a driving/braking force, a lateral force, and a ground contact load).

[0085] Hereinafter, the designations of the state amounts or the like of the actual vehicle 1 to be detected or estimated by the sensor/estimator 12 will be frequently accompanied by "actual." For instance, the yaw rate $\dot{\gamma}$ act of the actual vehicle 1, the traveling velocity V act of the actual vehicle 1, and the vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β act of the actual vehicle 1 will be referred to as the actual yaw rate $\dot{\gamma}$ act, the actual traveling velocity V act, and the actual vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β act, respectively.

[0086] Subsequently, the controller 10 determines, by a reference manipulated variable determiner 14, a reference model manipulated variable as an input to a reference dynamic characteristics model 16, which will be discussed later. In this case, the reference manipulated variable determiner 14 receives a drive operation input detected by a sensor of the manipulating devices 5 and determines the reference model manipulated variable on the basis of at least the drive operation input.

[0087] More specifically, in the present reference example 1, the reference model manipulated variable determined by the reference manipulated variable determiner 14 is the steering angle of the front wheels of a vehicle on a reference dynamic characteristics model 16,

- 51 -

which will be discussed later, (hereinafter referred to as the model front wheel steering angle). To determine the model front wheel steering angle, a steering angle θ_h (current time value) of the drive operation input is input as a main input amount to the reference manipulated variable determiner 14. At the same time, the actual traveling velocity V_{act} (current time value) and the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} (current time value) detected or estimated by the sensor/estimator 12, and a state amount (last time value) of the vehicle on the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 are input to the reference manipulated variable determiner 14. Further, the reference manipulated variable determiner 14 determines the model front wheel steering angle on the basis of these inputs. Basically, the model front wheel steering angle may be determined on the basis of the steering angle θ_h . In the present reference example 1, however, a predetermined restriction is placed on the model front wheel steering angles input to the reference dynamic characteristics model 16. To place the restriction, V_{act} , μ_{estm} and the like in addition to the steering angle θ_h are supplied to the reference manipulated variable determiner 14.

[0088] Supplementally, the type of reference model manipulated variable generally depends on the form of the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 or the type of state amount to be determined by the reference dynamic

- 52 -

characteristics model 16. The reference dynamic characteristics model 16 may include the reference manipulated variable determiner 14. If the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 is constructed to require
5 a drive operation input itself, then the reference manipulated variable determiner 14 may be omitted.

[0089] Subsequently, the controller 10 determines and outputs a reference state amount, which is the state amount of a reference motion of the actual vehicle 1
10 (hereinafter referred to as the reference motion), by the reference dynamic characteristics model 16. The reference dynamic characteristics model 16 is a model which is established beforehand and which represents dynamic characteristics of a vehicle, and it sequentially
15 determines a state amount of a reference motion (a reference state amount) on the basis of predetermined inputs, including the reference model manipulated variable mentioned above. The reference motion basically means an ideal motion or a motion close thereto of the actual
20 vehicle 1 which is considered desirable to a driver.

[0090] In this case, the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 receives mainly the reference model manipulated variable determined by the reference manipulated variable determiner 14 and control inputs
25 (feedback control inputs) M_{vir} and F_{vir} for operating the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 determined by an FB distribution law 20, which will be discussed later,

- 53 -

and determines a reference motion (eventually the time series of a reference state amount) on the basis of the inputs.

[0091] More specifically, in the present reference

5 example 1, a reference state amount determined and output by the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 is composed of a set of a reference state amount related to a rotational motion in the yaw direction of a vehicle and a reference state amount related to a translational motion
10 in the lateral direction of a vehicle. A reference state amount related to the rotational motion in the yaw direction of the vehicle is, for example, a yaw rate reference value γ_d (hereinafter referred to as the reference yaw rate γ_d in some cases) and the reference
15 state amount related to the translational motion in the lateral direction of the vehicle is, for example, a vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle reference value β_d (hereinafter referred to as the reference vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_d in some cases).
20 To sequentially determine these reference state amounts γ_d and β_d at each control processing cycle, the model front wheel steering angle (current time value) and the feedback control inputs M_{vir} and F_{vir} (last time values) as reference model manipulated variables are supplied. In
25 this case, in the present reference example 1, the traveling velocity of the vehicle on the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 is set to agree with the actual

- 54 -

traveling velocity V_{act} . Thus, the actual traveling velocity V_{act} (current time value) detected or estimated by the sensor/estimator 12 is also supplied to the reference dynamic characteristics model 16. Then, based on these inputs, the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 determines the yaw rate and the vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle of the vehicle on the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 and outputs the determined results as the reference state amounts γ_d and β_d .

[0092] Incidentally, the feedback control inputs M_{vir} and F_{vir} supplied to the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 are feedback control inputs additionally supplied to the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 in order to restrain alienation (separation) between a motion of the actual vehicle 1 and a reference motion due to, for example, a change in a traveling environment (such as a road surface condition) of the actual vehicle 1 (a change not considered in the reference dynamic characteristics model 16), a modeling error in the reference dynamic characteristics model 16, or a detection error or an estimation error of the sensor/estimator 12 (or in order to approximate a reference motion to a motion of the actual vehicle 1). In the present reference example 1, the feedback control inputs M_{vir} and F_{vir} are virtual external forces virtually applied to the vehicle on the reference dynamic characteristics model 16. M_{vir} of the

- 55 -

virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} denotes a virtual moment in the yaw direction which is to act about the center-of-gravity point of the vehicle 1 on the reference dynamic characteristics model 16, and F_{vir} denotes a
5 virtual translational force in the lateral direction which is to act on the center-of-gravity point.

[0093] Supplementally, the reference state amounts γ_d and β_d correspond to the first reference state amount in the present invention, and the reference dynamic

10 characteristics model 16 corresponds to a vehicle model in the present invention. Further, the processing by the reference manipulated variable determiner 14 and the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 constitutes the reference state amount determining means in the present
15 invention.

[0094] Subsequently, the controller 10 calculates, by a subtracter 18, a state amount error, which is the difference between the actual state amount (an actual state amount of the same type as a reference state amount)
20 detected or estimated by the sensor/estimator 12 and the reference state amount determined by the reference dynamic characteristics model 16.

[0095] More specifically, the subtracter 18 determines, as state amount errors, the differences $\gamma_{err}(=\gamma_{act}-\gamma_d)$ and
25 $\beta_{err}(=\beta_{act}-\gamma_d)$ between the values (current time values) of the actual yaw rate γ_{act} and the actual vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_{act} and the values (current

- 56 -

time values) of the reference yaw rate γ_d and the reference vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_d determined by the reference dynamic characteristics model 16.

5 [0096] Supplementally, the processing by the subtracter 18 constitutes the state amount error calculating means in the present invention. Further, the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} determined by the subtracter 18 correspond to the first state amount errors in the present invention.

10 [0097] Subsequently, the controller 10 supplies the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} determined as described above to the FB distribution law 20. The FB distribution law 20 determines the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} , which are feedback control inputs for manipulating the
15 reference dynamic characteristics model 16 and an actuator operation feedback target value (actuator operation FB target value), which is a feedback control input for operating the actuator devices 3 of the actual vehicle 1.

[0098] In the present reference example 1, the actuator
20 operation FB target value includes a feedback control input related to the operation of the braking device of the driving/braking device 3A (more specifically, a feedback control input for manipulating a driving/braking force to be applied to the wheels W1 to W4 by operating
25 the braking device). Alternatively, the actuator operation FB target value includes a feedback control input related to the operation of the steering device 3B

- 57 -

(more specifically, a feedback control input for manipulating the lateral forces of the front wheels W1 and W2 by operating the steering device 3B) in addition to a feedback control input related to the operation of the driving/braking device 3A. The actuator operation FB target value is, in other words, a feedback control input for manipulating (correcting) a road surface reaction force, which is an external force to be applied to the actual vehicle 1.

[0099] The FB distribution law 20 basically determines the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} and the actuator operation FB target value such that the received state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} are approximated to zero.

However, when determining the virtual external forces M_{vir}

and F_{vir} , the FB distribution law 20 determines the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} such that not only the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} are approximated to zero but the deviation of a predetermined restriction object amount of the actual vehicle 1 or the vehicle on

the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 from a predetermined permissible range is restrained. Further, the FB distribution law 20 determines, as the actuator operation FB target value, a feedback control input

related to the operation of the braking device of the driving/braking device 3A or the feedback control input and a feedback control input related to the operation of the steering device 3B such that a predetermined moment in

- 58 -

the yaw direction for approximating the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} to zero is generated about the center-of-gravity point of the actual vehicle 1 (more generally, such that a predetermined external force (road surface reaction force) for approximating the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} to zero acts on the actual vehicle 1).

[0100] To determine the virtual external forces M_{vir} , F_{vir} and the actuator operation FB target value, the FB distribution law 20 receives not only the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} but also at least one of the reference state amounts γ_d and β_d , which are outputs of the reference dynamic characteristics model 16, and the actual state amounts γ_{act} and β_{act} detected or estimated by the sensor/estimator 12. Furthermore, the FB distribution law 20 also receives actual state amounts, such as the actual traveling velocity V_{act} , the actual front wheel side slip angle β_{f_act} , and the actual rear wheel side slip angle β_{r_act} , detected or estimated by the sensor/estimator 12. Then, based on these inputs, the FB distribution law 20 determines the virtual external forces M_{vir} , F_{vir} and the actuator operation FB target value.

[0101] Supplementally, the virtual external forces M_{vir} , F_{vir} correspond to the vehicle model operation control input in the present invention, and the actuator operation FB target value includes a feedback control input in the present invention.

[0102] Meanwhile, in parallel to the control processing

- 59 -

(or by time-sharing processing) by the reference manipulated variable determiner 14, the reference dynamic characteristics model 16, the subtracter 18, and the FB distribution law 20 explained above, the controller 10
5 supplies the aforesaid drive operation inputs to an FF law 22 to determine an actuator operation FF target value, which is a feedforward target value (basic target value) of the operation of the actuator devices 3, by the FF law 22.

10 [0103] According to the present reference example 1, the actuator operation FF target value includes the feedforward target values related to the driving/braking forces of the wheels W1 to W4 of the actual vehicle 1 by the operation of the braking device of the driving/braking
15 device 3A, the feedforward target values related to the driving/braking forces of the driving wheels W1 and W2 of the actual vehicle 1 by the operation of the driving system of the driving/braking device 3A, the feedforward target values related to the reduction gear ratio (change
20 gear ratio) of the transmission of the driving/braking device 3A, and the feedforward target values related to the steering angles of the steering control wheels W1 and W2 of the actual vehicle 1 by the steering device 3B.

[0104] To determine these actuator operation FF target
25 values, the FF law 22 receives the drive operation input and also receives the actual state amount (the actual traveling velocity V_{act} or the like) detected or estimated

- 60 -

by the sensor/estimator 12. Then, based on these inputs, the FF law 22 determines the actuator operation FF target value. The actuator operation FF target value is an operation target value of the actuator devices 3 which is
5 determined without depending on the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} (the first state amount errors).

[0105] Supplementally, if the suspension device 3C is an active suspension device, then the actuator operation FF target value generally includes a feedforward target value
10 related to an operation of the suspension device 3C.

[0106] Subsequently, the controller 10 inputs the actuator operation FF target value (the current time value) determined by the FF law 22 and the actuator operation FB target value (the current time value)
15 determined by the FB distribution law 20 to the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24. Then, the controller 10 synthesizes the actuator operation FF target value and the actuator operation FB target value by the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24 to
20 determine the actuator operation target value, which is a target value defining the operation of the actuator devices 3.

[0107] According to the present reference example 1, the actuator operation target values include a target value of
25 the driving/braking forces of the wheels W1 to W4 of the actual vehicle 1 (a target value of the total driving/braking force by the operations of the driving

- 61 -

system of the driving/braking device 3A and the braking device), a target value of a slip ratio of the wheels W1 to W4 of the actual vehicle 1, a target value of a steering angle of the steering control wheels W1 and W2 of the actual vehicle 1 by the steering device 3B, a target value of the driving/braking force of the driving wheels W1 and W2 of the actual vehicle 1 by the operation of the driving system of the driving/braking device 3A, and a target value of a reduction gear ratio of the transmission of the driving/braking device 3A.

[0108] To determine these actuator operation target values, the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24 receives not only the actuator operation FF target value and the actuator operation FB target value but also the actual state amounts (the actual side slip angle β_{f_act} of the front wheels W1, W2 and the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} , etc.) detected or estimated by the sensor/estimator 12. Then, based on these inputs, the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24 determines the actuator operation target value.

[0109] Supplementally, the actuator operation target value is not limited to the types of target values described above. For example, in place of the target values, the target values of the actuator manipulated variables of the actuator devices 3 that are associated with the aforesaid target values may be determined. Basically, the actuator operation target values may take

- 62 -

any values as long as they make it possible to define the operations of the actuator devices. For instance, as the actuator operation target value related to an operation of the braking device, the target value of a braking pressure
5 may be determined or the target value of the actuator manipulated variable of the braking device associated therewith may be determined.

[0110] Incidentally, in the first embodiment or the second embodiment of the present invention, an actuator
10 operation FB target value determiner 20b of the FB distribution law 20, which will be discussed later, the FF law 22, and the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24, which will be discussed later, constitute the actual vehicle actuator operation control input
15 determining means in the present invention. An actuator operation target value determined by the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24 in the first embodiment or the second embodiment, which will be discussed later, is the same as that in the present
20 reference example 1.

[0111] Subsequently, the controller 10 inputs the actuator operation target value, which has been determined by the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24,
into the actuator drive control unit 26, and determines
25 the actuator manipulated variable of each of the actuator devices 3 of the actual vehicle 1 by the actuator drive control unit 26. Then, the actuator of each of the

- 63 -

actuator devices 3 of the actual vehicle 1 is controlled on the basis of the determined actuator manipulated variable.

5 [0112] In this case, the actuator drive control unit 26 determines the actuator manipulated variable such that the input actuator operation target value is satisfied or in exact accordance with the actuator operation target value. Further, for this determination, the actuator drive control unit 26 also receives the actual state amounts of
10 the actual vehicle 1 detected or estimated by the sensor/estimator 12 in addition to the actuator operation target value. Among the control functions of the actuator drive control unit 26, the control function related to the braking device of the driving/braking device 3A desirably
15 incorporates a so-called antilock braking system.

[0113] The above has provided an overview of the control processing for each control processing cycle of the controller 10.

[0114] The order of the processing of each control
20 processing function-section of the controller 10 may be changed, as necessary. For example, the processing by the sensor/estimator 12 may be executed at the end of each control processing cycle and a detected value or an estimated value obtained thereby may be used for the
25 processing of the next control processing cycle.

[0115]

More detailed processing of the control processing

- 64 -

function section of the controller 10 in the present reference example 1 will now be explained.

[0116] [About a reference dynamic characteristics model]

First, the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 in the present reference example 1 will be explained by referring to Fig. 3. Fig. 3 is a diagram showing the construction of a vehicle on the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 in the present reference example 1. This reference dynamic characteristics model 16 is a model which expresses the dynamic characteristics of a vehicle in terms of the dynamic characteristics (kinetic characteristics) on a horizontal plane of a vehicle equipped with one front wheel W_f and one rear wheel W_r at the front and the back (a so-called two-wheeled model). Hereinafter, the vehicle on the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 (the vehicle corresponding to the actual vehicle 1 on the reference dynamic characteristics model 16) will be referred to as the model vehicle. The front wheel W_f of the model vehicle corresponds to a wheel that combines the two front wheels W_1 and W_2 of the actual vehicle 1 into one piece and provides the steering control wheel of the model vehicle. The rear wheel W_r corresponds to a wheel that combines the rear wheels W_3 and W_4 of the actual vehicle 1 into one piece and provides a non-steering control wheel in the present reference example 1.

[0117] An angle β_d formed with respect to the longitudinal direction of the model vehicle by the

velocity vector V_d on the horizontal plane of a center-of-gravity point G_d of the model vehicle (i.e., a vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_d of the model vehicle) and the angular velocity γ_d about the vertical axis of the model vehicle (i.e., the yaw rate γ_d of the model vehicle) are the reference state amounts sequentially determined by the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 as the reference vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle and the reference yaw rate, respectively. Further, an angle δf_d formed with respect to the longitudinal direction of the model vehicle by a line of intersection of the rotational plane of the front wheel W_f of the model vehicle and the horizontal plane is the reference model manipulated variable input to the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 as the model front wheel steering angle. Further, a translational force F_{vir} in the lateral direction additionally applied to the center-of-gravity point G_d of the model vehicle (in the lateral direction of the model vehicle) and a moment M_{vir} in the yaw direction (about the vertical axis) additionally applied about the center-of-gravity point G_d of the model vehicle are the feedback control inputs supplied as the virtual external forces to the reference dynamic characteristics model 16.

[0118] In Fig. 3, V_{f_d} denotes an advancing velocity vector of the front wheel W_f of the model vehicle on the horizontal plane, V_{r_d} denotes an advancing velocity

- 66 -

vector of the rear wheel W_r of the model vehicle on the horizontal plane, β_{f_d} denotes a side slip angle of the front wheel W_f (an angle formed with respect to the longitudinal direction of the front wheel W_f (the direction of the line of intersection of the rotational plane of the front wheel W_f and the horizontal plane) by the advancing velocity vector V_{f_d} of the front wheel W_f . Hereinafter referred to as the front wheel side slip angle β_{f_d}), β_{r_d} denotes a side slip angle of the rear wheel W_r (an angle formed with respect to the longitudinal direction of the rear wheel W_r (the direction of the line of intersection of the rotational plane of the rear wheel W_r and the horizontal plane) by the advancing velocity vector V_{r_d} of the rear wheel W_r . Hereinafter referred to as the rear wheel side slip angle β_{r_d}), and β_{f0} denotes an angle formed with respect to the longitudinal direction of the model vehicle by the advancing velocity vector V_{f_d} of the front wheel W_f of the model vehicle (hereinafter referred to as the vehicle front wheel position side slip angle).

[0119] Supplementally, according to the embodiments and the reference examples in the present description, regarding a side slip angle of a vehicle or a wheel, a steering angle of a wheel, a yaw rate of the vehicle and a moment in the yaw direction, the counterclockwise direction as observed from above the vehicle is defined as the positive direction. Further, of the virtual external

- 67 -

forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} , the translational force F_{vir} defines the leftward direction of the vehicle as the positive direction. For a driving/braking force of a wheel, the direction of a force for accelerating the vehicle forward in the direction of the line of intersection of the rotational surface of a wheel and a road surface or a horizontal plane (road surface reaction force) is defined as the positive direction. In other words, a driving/braking force in the direction that provides a driving force relative to the advancing direction of the vehicle takes a positive value, while a driving/braking force in the direction that provides a braking force relative to the advancing direction of the vehicle takes a negative value.

[0120] Specifically, the dynamic characteristics (the dynamic characteristics in a continuous system) of the model vehicle are represented by expression 01 given below. The formula excluding the third term (the term including F_{vir} and M_{vir}) of the right side of this expression 01 is equivalent to, for example, the publicly known expressions (3.12), (3.13) shown in the publicly known document titled "Motion and Control of Automobile" (written by Masato Abe; published by Sankaido Co., Ltd.; and 2nd printing, 2nd edition published on July 23, 2004: hereinafter referred to as non-patent document 1).

[0121] [Mathematical Expression 1]

- 68 -

$$\frac{d}{dt} \begin{bmatrix} \beta_d \\ \gamma_d \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \beta_d \\ \gamma_d \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \end{bmatrix} \cdot \delta_{f_d} + \begin{bmatrix} b_{11} & 0 \\ 0 & b_{22} \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} F_{vir} \\ M_{vir} \end{bmatrix} \dots\dots \text{Expression 01}$$

where

$$a_{11} = -\frac{2 \cdot (K_f + K_r)}{m \cdot V_d} \quad a_{12} = -\frac{m \cdot V_d^2 + 2 \cdot (L_f \cdot K_f - L_r \cdot K_r)}{m \cdot V_d^2}$$

$$a_{21} = -\frac{2 \cdot (L_f \cdot K_f - L_r \cdot K_r)}{I} \quad a_{22} = -\frac{2 \cdot (L_f^2 \cdot K_f + L_r^2 \cdot K_r)}{I \cdot V_d}$$

$$b_1 = \frac{2 \cdot K_f}{m \cdot V_d} \quad b_2 = \frac{2 \cdot L_f \cdot K_f}{I} \quad b_{11} = \frac{1}{m \cdot V_d} \quad b_{22} = \frac{1}{I}$$

[0122] In the note of the expression 01, m denotes the total mass of the model vehicle, Kf denotes the cornering power per wheel when the front wheel Wf of the model vehicle is regarded as a connected body of the two right and left front wheels, Kr denotes the cornering power per wheel when the rear wheel Wr of the model vehicle is regarded as a connected body of the two right and left rear wheels, Lf denotes the distance in the longitudinal direction between the center of the front wheel Wf of the model vehicle and the center-of-gravity point Gd (the distance in the longitudinal direction between the rotational axis of the front wheel Wf and the center-of-gravity point Gd when the steering angle of the front wheel Wf is zero. Refer to Fig. 3), Lr denotes the distance in the longitudinal direction between the center of the rear wheel Wr of the model vehicle and the center-of-gravity point Gd (the distance in the longitudinal direction between the rotational axis of the rear wheel Wr

- 69 -

and the center-of-gravity point Gd. Refer to Fig. 3), and I denotes the inertia (inertial moment) about the yaw axis at the center-of-gravity point Gd of the model vehicle.

These parameter values are preset values. In this case,

5 for example, m, I, Lf and Lr are set to the same or substantially the same values thereof in the actual vehicle 1. Further, Kf and Kr are set by considering the characteristics of the tires (or the characteristics required of the tires) of the front wheels W1, W2 and the rear wheels W3, W4, respectively, of the actual vehicle 1.

10 Depending on the setting of the values of Kf and Kr (more generally, the values of a11, a12, a21, and a22), the steering characteristics, such as under-steering, over-steering, and neutral steering, can be set. Further, the values of m, I, Kf, and Kr in the actual vehicle 1 may be identified during a travel of the actual vehicle 1 and the identified values may be used as the values of m, I, Kf, and Kr of the model vehicle.

[0123] Supplementally, the relationship among β_{f0} , β_d ,

20 β_{f_d} , β_{r_d} , γ_d , and δ_{f_d} of the model vehicle is represented by expressions 02a, 02b, and 02c given below.

[0124]

$$\beta_{f\_d} = \beta_d + L_f \cdot \gamma_d / V_d - \delta_{f\_d} \quad \dots\dots \text{Expression 02a}$$

$$\beta_{r\_d} = \beta_d - L_r \cdot \gamma_d / V_d \quad \dots\dots \text{Expression 02b}$$

25
$$\beta_{f0} = \beta_{f\_d} + \delta_{f\_d} = \beta_d + L_f \cdot \gamma_d / V_d \quad \dots\dots \text{Expression 02c}$$

Further, as shown in Fig. 3, if the cornering

- 70 -

force of the front wheel W_f of the model vehicle ($\approx$ a lateral force of the front wheel W_f) is denoted by F_{fy_d} and the cornering force of the rear wheel W_r of the model vehicle ($\approx$ a lateral force of the rear wheel W_r) is denoted by F_{ry_d} , then the relationship between F_{fy_d} and β_{f_d} and the relationship between F_{ry_d} and β_{r_d} are represented by expressions 03a and 03b shown below.

[0125]

$$F_{fy\_d} = -2 \cdot K_f \cdot \beta_{f\_d} \dots\dots \text{Expression 03a}$$

$$F_{ry\_d} = -2 \cdot K_r \cdot \beta_{r\_d} \dots\dots \text{Expression 03b}$$

In the processing by the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 in the present reference example 1, δ_{f_d} , F_{vir} , and M_{vir} in expression 01 given above are used as inputs and the arithmetic processing of expression 01 (specifically, the arithmetic processing of an expression obtained by representing expression 01 in terms of a discrete-time system) is sequentially carried out at a control processing cycle of the controller 10, thereby sequentially calculating β_d and γ_d in a time series manner. In this case, at each control processing cycle, a latest value (a current time value) of the actual traveling velocity V_{act} detected or estimated by the sensor/estimator 12 is used as the value of the traveling velocity V_d of the model vehicle. In other words, the traveling velocity V_d of the model vehicle is always made to agree with the actual traveling velocity V_{act} . As the

- 71 -

values of F_{vir} and M_{vir} , the latest values (last time values) of the virtual external forces determined by the FB distribution law 20 as will be discussed later are used. As the value of δf_d , a latest value (a current time value) of a model front wheel steering angle determined by the reference manipulated variable determiner 14 as will be discussed later is used. In addition, the last time values of β_d and γ_d are also used to calculate new β_d and γ_d (current time values).

[0126] Supplementally, the dynamic characteristics of the model vehicle may, more generally, be represented by expression (4) shown below.

[0127] [Mathematical expression 2]

$$\frac{d}{dt} \begin{bmatrix} \beta_d \\ \gamma_d \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} f1(\gamma_d, \beta_d, \delta f_d) \\ f2(\gamma_d, \beta_d, \delta f_d) \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} b11 & 0 \\ 0 & b22 \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} F_{vir} \\ M_{vir} \end{bmatrix} \dots\dots \text{Expression 04}$$

[0128] Here, $f1(\gamma_d, \beta_d, \delta f_d)$ and $f2(\gamma_d, \beta_d, \delta f_d)$ are functions of γ_d , β_d , and δf_d , respectively. The above expression 01 is an example of the case where the values of the functions $f1$ and $f2$ are represented in terms of linear coupling (primary coupling) of γ_d , β_d , and δf_d .

The functions $f1$ and $f2$ do not have to be the functions represented by mathematical expressions, and the function values thereof may be functions determined by a map from the values of γ_d , β_d , and δf_d .

[0129] The behavior characteristics of the actual vehicle 1 in the present reference example 1 show behavior characteristics somewhere between the open characteristics

- 72 -

of the actual vehicle 1 when the present invention is not applied (the behavior characteristics of the actual vehicle 1 when the actuator FB operation target value is steadily maintained at zero) and the behavior characteristics of the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 when the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} are steadily maintained at zero. Therefore, in general, the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 is desirably set to a model that shows a response behavior which a driver considers more preferable than the open characteristics of the actual vehicle 1. To be more specific, the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 is desirably set to be a model having higher linearity than that in the actual vehicle 1. For example, it is desirable to set the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 such that the relationship between the side slip angle or the slip ratio of a wheel of the model vehicle and a road surface reaction force acting on the wheel from the road surface (a lateral force or a driving/braking force) is a linear relationship or a relationship close thereto. The reference dynamic characteristics model 16 representing dynamic characteristics by the expression 01 is one example of the model that satisfies these requirements.

[0130] However, the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 may have a characteristic in which a road surface reaction force acting on the wheels W_f and W_r of the model

- 73 -

vehicle saturates in response to a change in a side slip angle or a slip ratio. For instance, the values of the cornering powers K_f and K_r are set on the basis of the front wheel side slip angle β_{f_d} and the rear wheel side slip angle β_{r_d} rather than setting them at constant values. And, at this time, the value of K_f is set on the basis of β_{f_d} such that the lateral force F_{fy_d} of the front wheel W_f generated on the basis of β_{f_d} (refer to the expression 03a) saturates as β_{f_d} increases when the absolute value of the front wheel side slip angle β_{f_d} has increased to a certain degree. Similarly, the value of K_r is set on the basis of β_{r_d} such that the lateral force F_{ry_d} of the rear wheel W_r generated on the basis of β_{r_d} (refer to the expression 03b) saturates as β_{r_d} increases when the absolute value of the rear wheel side slip angle β_{r_d} has increased to a certain degree. This causes the lateral forces F_{fy_d} and F_{ry_d} acting on the wheels W_f and W_r of the model vehicle to have the saturation characteristic relative to the side slip angle β_{f_d} or β_{r_d} .

[0131]

[About the reference manipulated variable determiner]

The details of the processing by the reference manipulated variable determiner 14 will now be explained with reference to Fig. 4 and Fig. 5. Fig. 4 is a functional block diagram showing the details of the

- 74 -

processing function of the reference manipulated variable determiner 14, and Fig. 5 is a graph for explaining the processing by an excessive centrifugal force prevention limiter 14f provided in the reference manipulated variable determiner 14.

[0132] Referring to Fig. 4, the reference manipulated variable determiner 14 first determines, in a processor 14a, an unlimited front wheel steering angle δf_unltd by dividing a steering angle θh (a current time value) in the drive operation inputs, which are to be supplied, by an overall steering ratio "is". This unlimited front wheel steering angle δf_unltd has a meaning as a basic required value of a model front wheel steering angle δf_d based on the steering angle θh .

[0133] Here, the overall steering ratio "is" is the ratio between the steering angle θh and the steering angle of the front wheel Wf of the model vehicle, and it is set in conformity with, for example, the relationship between the steering angle θh of the actual vehicle 1 and the feedforward value of the steering angle of the front wheels $W1$ and $W2$ of the actual vehicle 1 associated therewith.

[0134] The overall steering ratio "is" may be variably set on the basis of the traveling velocity $Vact$ of the actual vehicle 1 detected or estimated by the sensor/estimator 12 rather than setting it at a constant value (a fixed value). In this case, it is desirable to set the "is" such that the overall steering ratio "is"

- 75 -

increases as the traveling velocity V_{act} of the actual vehicle 1 increases.

[0135] Subsequently, the vehicle front wheel position side slip angle β_{f0} of the model vehicle on the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 is determined by a β_{f0} calculator 14b. The β_{f0} calculator 14b receives the last time values of the reference yaw rate γ_d and the reference vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_d determined by the reference dynamic characteristics model 16. From these values, the last time value of β_{f0} is determined by calculating the expression 02c (calculating the right side of the second equal sign of expression 02c). Thus, β_{f0} calculated by the β_{f0} calculator 14b takes the value of the vehicle front wheel position side slip angle β_{f0} of the model vehicle at the last time control processing cycle.

[0136] Alternatively, the last time value of the front wheel side slip angle β_{f_d} of the model vehicle may be determined by the calculation of the expression 02a from the last time values of γ_d and β_d , the last time value of the model front wheel steering angle δ_{f_d} determined by the reference manipulated variable determiner 14, and the last time value of the actual traveling velocity V_{act} , then the last time value of the model front wheel steering angle δ_{f_d} determined by the reference manipulated variable determiner 14 may be added to the determined β_{f_d} (calculating the right side of the first equal sign of

- 76 -

expression 02c) thereby to determine β_{f0} . Alternatively, at each control processing cycle, the calculation of β_{f0} may be carried out by the processing performed by the reference dynamic characteristics model 16, and the last
5 time value of the calculated β_{f0} may be input to the reference manipulated variable determiner 14. In this case, the arithmetic processing by the β_{f0} calculator 14b in the reference manipulated variable determiner 14 is unnecessary.

10 [0137] Subsequently, the unlimited front wheel steering angle δf_{unltd} is subtracted by a subtracter 14c from the vehicle front wheel position side slip angle β_{f0} determined as described above, thereby determining the unlimited front wheel side slip angle. The unlimited
15 front wheel side slip angle means an instantaneous predicted value of the front wheel side slip angle β_{f_d} of the model vehicle generated if it is assumed that the model front wheel steering angle δf_d of the model vehicle is instantaneously controlled to the unlimited front wheel
20 steering angle δf_{unltd} (current time value) from the last time value.

[0138] Subsequently, the reference manipulated variable determiner 14 passes the unlimited front wheel side slip angle through a front wheel side slip angle limiter 14d to
25 determine a limited front wheel side slip angle. Here, the graph of the front wheel side slip angle limiter 14d shown in the figure is a graph illustrating the

- 77 -

relationship between an unlimited front wheel side slip angle and a limited front wheel side slip angle, the values in the direction of the axis of abscissas related to the graph indicating the values of the unlimited front wheel side slip angles while the values in the direction of the axis of ordinates indicating the values of the limited front wheel side slip angles.

[0139] The front wheel side slip angle limiter 14d is a limiter for restraining the magnitude of the front wheel side slip angle β_{f_d} of the model vehicle from becoming excessive (furthermore, for preventing the lateral forces of the front wheels W1 and W2 required for the actual vehicle 1 from becoming excessive).

[0140] In the present reference example 1, the front wheel side slip angle limiter 14d sets the permissible range of the front wheel side slip angle β_{f_d} (more specifically, the upper limit value $\beta_{f\_max}(>0)$ and the lower limit value $\beta_{f\_min}(<0)$ of the permissible range) on the basis of the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} (current time value) and the actual traveling velocity V_{act} (current time value) input from the sensor/estimator 12 into the reference manipulated variable determiner 14. In this case, basically, the permissible range is set such that the permissible range $[\beta_{f\_min}, \beta_{f\_max}]$ is narrower (β_{f_max} and β_{f_min} are brought more closely to zero) as the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} is smaller or the actual traveling velocity V_{act} is higher. At this time,

- 78 -

the permissible range $[\beta_{f\_min}, \beta_{f\_max}]$ is set in the range of the values of side slip angle that maintains the relationship between, for example, the side slip angle and the lateral force of the front wheels W1 and W2 of the actual vehicle 1 or the cornering force at a substantially linear relationship (a proportional relationship).

[0141] The permissible range $[\beta_{f\_min}, \beta_{f\_max}]$ may be set on the basis of either μ_{estm} or V_{act} , or may be set to a pre-fixed permissible range independently of μ_{estm} and V_{act} .

[0142] And, if the value of the received unlimited front wheel side slip angle is within the permissible range $[\beta_{f\_min}, \beta_{f\_max}]$ set as described above (if $\beta_{f\_min} \leq$ unlimited front wheel side slip angle $\leq \beta_{f\_max}$), then the front wheel side slip angle limiter 14d directly outputs the value of the unlimited front wheel side slip angle as the limited front wheel side slip angle. If the value of the received unlimited front wheel side slip angle deviates from the permissible range, then the front wheel side slip angle limiter 14d outputs the lower limit value β_{f_min} or the upper limit value β_{f_max} of the permissible range $[\beta_{f\_min}, \beta_{f\_max}]$ as the limited front wheel side slip angle. To be more specific, if the unlimited front wheel side slip angle $> \beta_{f\_max}$, then the β_{f_max} is output as the limited front wheel side slip angle. If the unlimited front wheel side slip angle $< \beta_{f\_min}$, then the β_{f_min} is output as the limited front wheel side slip

- 79 -

angle. Thus, the limited front wheel side slip angle is determined such that it agrees with an unlimited front wheel side slip angle or takes a value that is closest to the unlimited front wheel side slip angle within the permissible range $[\beta_{f\_min}, \beta_{f\_max}]$.

[0143] Subsequently, the limited front wheel side slip angle determined as described above is subtracted by a subtracter 14e from the vehicle front wheel position side slip angle β_{f0} determined by the β_{f0} calculator 14b

thereby to determine a first limited front wheel steering angle δ_{f_ltd1} . The first limited front wheel steering angle δ_{f_ltd1} determined as described above has a meaning as a model front wheel steering angle δ_{f_d} obtained by restricting the unlimited front wheel steering angle δ_{f_unltd} such that the front wheel side slip angle β_{f_d} of the model vehicle does not deviate from the permissible range $[\beta_{f\_min}, \beta_{f\_max}]$.

[0144] Subsequently, the reference manipulated variable determiner 14 passes the first limited front wheel steering angle δ_{f_ltd1} through the excessive centrifugal force prevention limiter 14f to determine a second limited front wheel steering angle δ_{f_ltd2} . This δ_{f_ltd2} is used as the value of the model front wheel steering angle δ_{f_d} to be input to the reference dynamic characteristics model 16. The graph of the excessive centrifugal force prevention limiter 14f shown in the figure is a graph illustrating the relationship between the first limited

- 80 -

front wheel steering angle δf_ltd1 and the second limited front wheel steering angle δf_ltd2 , the values in the direction of the axis of abscissas related to the graph indicating the values of δf_ltd1 while the values in the direction of the axis of ordinates indicating the values of δf_ltd2 .

[0145] The excessive centrifugal force prevention limiter 14f is a limiter for restraining the centrifugal force generated in the model vehicle from becoming excessive (furthermore, for preventing the centrifugal force required for the actual vehicle 1 from becoming excessive).

[0146] In the present reference example 1, the excessive centrifugal force prevention limiter 14f sets the permissible range of the model front wheel steering angle δf_d (more specifically, the upper limit value $\delta f\_max(>0)$ and the lower limit value $\delta f\_min(<0)$ of the permissible range) on the basis of the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} (current time value) and the actual traveling velocity V_{act} (current time value) input to the reference manipulated variable determiner 14. This permissible range $[\delta f\_min, \delta f\_max]$ is the permissible range of the model front wheel steering angle δf_d that allows the model vehicle to make a normal circular turn without exceeding the limit of friction against a road surface when it is assumed that the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} are steadily held at zero.

[0147] More specifically, first, a maximum yaw rate γ_{max}

- 81 -

(>0) at a normal circular turn, which is a yaw rate that satisfies expression 05 given below, is determined on the basis of the values (current time values) of Vact and μ_{estm} input to the reference manipulated variable determiner 14.

[0148]

$$m \cdot \gamma_{max} \cdot V_{act} = C1 \cdot \mu_{estm} \cdot m \cdot g \dots\dots \text{Expression 05}$$

where m in expression 05 denotes the total mass of the model vehicle, as described above. Further, g denotes a gravitational acceleration and C1 denotes a positive coefficient of 1 or less. The left side of this expression 05 means a centrifugal force generated in the model vehicle (more specifically, a predicted convergence value of the centrifugal force) when the normal circular turn of the model vehicle is made while holding the yaw rate γ_d and the traveling velocity V_d of the model vehicle at γ_{max} and V_{act} , respectively. Further, the value of the computation result of the right side of expression 05 indicates the value ($\leq$ the limit value) obtained by multiplying the limit value of the magnitude of a road surface reaction force determined on the basis of μ_{estm} (more specifically, a total frictional force that can be applied to the model vehicle from a road surface through the intermediary of the wheels W_f and W_r (the total sum of the translational force horizontal components of a road surface reaction force)) by the coefficient C1. Hence, the

maximum yaw rate $\gamma_{\max}$ at a normal circular turn is determined such that the centrifugal force generated in the model vehicle when the normal circular turn of the model vehicle is made while holding the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} to be applied to the model vehicle at zero and the yaw rate γ_d and the traveling velocity V_d of the model vehicle at $\gamma_{\max}$ and V_{act} , respectively, does not exceed the limit value of the total frictional force (the total sum of the translational force horizontal components of a road surface reaction force) which can be applied to the model vehicle on the basis of the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} .

[0149] Incidentally, the value of the coefficient C_1 of expression 05 may be variably set on the basis of the value of at least either one of μ_{estm} and V_{act} . In this case, preferably, the value of C_1 is set to be smaller as μ_{estm} is smaller or as V_{act} is higher.

[0150] Subsequently, the value of the model front wheel steering angle δf_d associated with $\gamma_{\max}$ at the normal circular turn of the model vehicle is determined as a limit steering angle at normal circular turn $\delta f_{\max_c}(>0)$. Here, in the reference dynamic characteristics model represented by the expression 01, the relationship of expression 06 given below holds between the yaw rate γ_d of the model vehicle at the normal circular turn and the model front wheel steering angle δf_d .

[0151] [Mathematical expression 3]

- 83 -

$$\gamma_d = \frac{1}{1 - \frac{m}{2 \cdot L^2} \cdot \frac{L_f \cdot K_f - L_r \cdot K_r}{K_f \cdot K_r} \cdot V_d^2} \cdot \frac{V_d}{L} \cdot \delta f_d \quad \text{..... Expression 06}$$

where , $L = L_f + L_r$

[0152] If V_d is sufficiently small (if it is possible to regard as $V_d^2 \approx 0$), then expression 06 can be approximately rewritten to the following expression 07.

5 [0153]

$$\gamma_d = (V_d/L) \cdot \delta f_d \quad \text{..... Expression 07}$$

Hence, in the present reference example 1, the limit steering angle $\delta f_{\max\_c}$ at normal circular turn associated with $\gamma_{\max}$ is determined by making a solution on δf_d by denoting the values of γ_d and V_d , respectively, in expression 06 or expression 07 as $\gamma_{\max}$ and V_{act} .

10 [0154] The permissible range $[\delta f_{\min}, \delta f_{\max}]$ of the model front wheel steering angle δf_d for preventing a centrifugal force generated in the model vehicle from becoming excessive may be basically set to a permissible range $[-\delta f_{\max\_c}, \delta f_{\max\_c}]$. In that case, however, the model front wheel steering angle δf_d may be subjected to unwanted restriction in a countersteering state of the actual vehicle 1 (a state wherein the front wheels W1 and W2 are steered in the direction of the opposite polarity from the polarity of the yaw rate of the actual vehicle 1).

20 [0155] In the present reference example 1, therefore, $\delta f_{\max\_c}$ and $-\delta f_{\max\_c}$ are corrected according to

expressions 08a and 08b given below on the basis of the yaw rates γ_d and γ_{max} of the model vehicle thereby to set the upper limit value δf_{max} and the lower limit value δf_{min} of the permissible range of the model front wheel steering angle δf_d .

[0156]

$\delta f_{max} = \delta f_{max\_c} + fe(\gamma_d, \gamma_{max})$ Expression 08a

$\delta f_{min} = -\delta f_{max\_c} - fe(-\gamma_d, -\gamma_{max})$ Expression 08b

10 $fe(\gamma_d, \gamma_{max})$ and $fe(-\gamma_d, -\gamma_{max})$ in expressions 08a and 08b are functions of γ_d and γ_{max} , and the function values thereof are, for example, functions that vary according to the values of γ_d and γ_{max} , as shown in the graphs of Figs. 5(a) and (b). In this example, the value
15 of the function $fe(\gamma_d, \gamma_{max})$ takes a positive fixed value fex if γ_d takes a value of a predetermined value γ_1 , which is slightly larger than zero, or less (including a case where $\gamma_d < 0$), as shown in the graph of Fig. 5(a). And, the value of $fe(\gamma_d, \gamma_{max})$ monotonously decreases as γ_d
20 increases if $\gamma_d > \gamma_1$ and reaches zero by the time γ_d reaches $\gamma_2 (> \gamma_1)$, which is a predetermined value of γ_{max} or less. Further, the value of $fe(\gamma_d, \gamma_{max})$ is maintained at zero if $\gamma_d > \gamma_2$ (including the case where $\gamma_d \geq \gamma_{max}$).

[0157] Further, a function $fe(-\gamma_d, -\gamma_{max})$ is a function
25 obtained by reversing the polarities of the variables γ_d and γ_{max} of the function $fe(\gamma_d, \gamma_{max})$, so that the value of the function $fe(-\gamma_d, -\gamma_{max})$ varies in relation to γ_d , as

shown in the graph of Fig. 5(b). More specifically, if γ_d takes a value of a predetermined negative value $-\gamma_1$, which is slightly smaller than zero, or more (including the case where $\gamma_d > 0$), then the function takes a positive fixed value f_{ex} . And, the value of $f_e(-\gamma_d, -\gamma_{max})$ monotonously decreases as γ_d decreases if $\gamma_d < -\gamma_1$ and reaches zero by the time when γ_d reaches $-\gamma_2$, which is a predetermined value of $-\gamma_{max}$ or more. Further, the value of $f_e(-\gamma_d, -\gamma_{max})$ is maintained at zero if $\gamma_d < -\gamma_2$ (including the case where $\gamma_d \leq -\gamma_{max}$).

[0158] As the value of γ_d required for determining the values of the functions $f_e(\gamma_d, \gamma_{max})$ and $f_e(-\gamma_d, -\gamma_{max})$, the last time value of the reference yaw rate γ_d determined by the reference dynamic characteristics model may be used.

[0159] Further, the values γ_1 and γ_2 of γ_d at breakpoints of the graph of the function $f_e(\gamma_d, \gamma_{max})$ or the aforesaid positive fixed value f_{ex} may be variably changed according to the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} or the actual traveling velocity V_{act} .

[0160] The permissible range $[\delta f_{min}, \delta f_{max}]$ of the model front wheel steering angle δf_d is set by correcting δf_{max_c} on the basis of the value of the function f_e as described above, so that the magnitude (the absolute value) of the limit value δf_{max} or δf_{min} of the model front wheel steering angle δf_d in the direction opposite from the direction of γ_d is set to be larger than the

limit steering angle $\delta f_{\max\_c}$ at a normal circular turn associated with the limit of a centrifugal force generated in the model vehicle. This makes it possible to prevent the model front wheel steering angle δf_d from being subjected to unwanted restriction in the countersteering state of the actual vehicle 1. Incidentally, the permissible range $[-\delta f_{\min}, \delta f_{\max}]$ narrows as the actual traveling velocity V_{act} increases or as the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} decreases.

[0161] After setting the permissible range of the model front wheel steering angle δf_d as described above, the excessive centrifugal force prevention limiter 14f directly outputs the value of δf_{ltd1} as the second limited front wheel steering angle δf_{ltd2} (= the model front wheel steering angle δf_d to be input to the reference dynamic characteristics model 16) if the received first limited front wheel steering angle δf_{ltd1} takes a value within the permissible range $[\delta f_{\min}, \delta f_{\max}]$ (if $\delta f_{\min} \leq \delta f_{ltd1} \leq \delta f_{\max}$). Further, if the value of the received δf_{ltd1} deviates from the permissible range $[\delta f_{\min}, \delta f_{\max}]$, then the excessive centrifugal force prevention limiter 14f outputs a value obtained by forcibly restricting the input value as the second limited front wheel steering angle δf_{ltd2} . To be more specific, if $\delta f_{ltd1} > \delta f_{\max}$, then $\delta f_{\max}$ is output as the second limited front wheel steering angle δf_{ltd2} , and if $\delta f_{ltd1} < \delta f_{\min}$, then $\delta f_{\min}$ is output as the second

- 87 -

limited front wheel steering angle δf_ltd2 . Thus, δf_ltd2 is determined such that it agrees with the first limited front wheel steering angle δf_ltd1 or takes a value that is closest to the first limited front wheel steering angle δf_ltd1 within the permissible range $[\delta f\_min, \delta f\_max]$.

[0162] In the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 represented by the expression 01, the relationship of expression 09 given below holds between βd and γd at a normal circular turn of the model vehicle.

[0163] [Mathematical expression 4]

$$\beta d = \left(1 - \frac{m}{2 \cdot L} \cdot \frac{L_f}{L_r \cdot K_r} \cdot V_d^2 \right) \cdot \frac{L_r}{V_d} \cdot \gamma d \quad \text{..... Expression 09}$$

[0164] If V_d is sufficiently small (if it is possible to regard as $V_d^2 \approx 0$), then expression 09 can be approximately rewritten to the following expression 10.

[0165]

$$\beta d = (L_r / V_d) \cdot \gamma d \quad \text{..... Expression 10}$$

Hence, the value of γd or γ_{max} at the normal circular turn of the model vehicle can be converted into a value of βd (provided $V_d = V_{act}$) according to expression 09 or expression 10. Therefore, the permissible range of the model front wheel steering angle δf_d may be set on the basis of the value of the vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle βd associated with the yaw rates γd and γ_{max} instead of setting the permissible range of the model

- 88 -

front wheel steering angle δf_d on the basis of the values of the yaw rates γ_d and γ_{max} as described above.

[0166] The above has presented the details of the processing by the reference manipulated variable determiner 14.

[0167] The processing by the reference manipulated variable determiner 14 explained above determines, at each control processing cycle, the second limited front wheel steering angle δf_{ltd2} as the model front wheel steering angle δf_d to be input to the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 on the basis of the steering angle θ_h among drive operation inputs such that an instantaneous value of the front wheel side slip angle βf_d of the model vehicle on the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 does not become excessive and the centrifugal force generated in the model vehicle does not become excessive.

[0168] Supplementally, in the excessive centrifugal force prevention limiter 14f, limiting the model front wheel steering angle δf_d to be input to the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 as described above to prevent the centrifugal force generated in the model vehicle from becoming excessive is equivalent to limiting the model front wheel steering angle δf_d to prevent the vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_d (or the rear wheel side slip angle βr_d) of the model vehicle from becoming excessive. Further, in general, a centrifugal

force in the vehicle or a vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle (or a rear wheel side slip angle) is generated with a delay from a steering operation, so that the processing for limiting the model front wheel steering angle δf_d performed by the excessive centrifugal force prevention limiter 14f may be said to be the processing for limiting the model front wheel steering angle δf_d on the basis of a predicted convergence values of a centrifugal force of the vehicle or a vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle (or a rear wheel side slip angle). In contrast to this, the limiting processing by the front wheel side slip angle limiter 14d may be said to be the processing for limiting the model front wheel steering angle δf_d to prevent an instantaneous value of the front wheel side slip angle βf_d of the model vehicle from becoming excessive.

[0169] In the present reference example 1, the function f_e used to set the permissible range $[\delta f_{\min}, \delta f_{\max}]$ by the excessive centrifugal force prevention limiter 14f has been set as shown in Figs. 5(a) and (b) described above; however, the method for setting the function f_e it is not limited thereto.

[0170] For instance, the function $f_e(\gamma_d, \gamma_{\max})$ may be set as shown by the solid-line graph in Fig. 6. In this example, the value of $f_e(\gamma_d, \gamma_{\max})$ monotonously decreases as the value of γ_d increases (increases from a value on the negative side to a value on the positive side) and

- 90 -

becomes zero when $\gamma_d = \gamma_{\max}$. At this time, the function $fe(-\gamma_d, -\gamma_{\max})$ will be as indicated by the dashed-line graph in Fig. 6. In this case, the upper limit value $\delta f_{\max}$ of the permissible range of the model front wheel steering angle δf_d determined by the expression 08a will be closer to zero than the limit steering angle $\delta f_{\max_c}$ at normal circular turn as γ_d increases when γ_d exceeds $\gamma_{\max}$.

Similarly, the lower limit value $\delta f_{\min}$ of the permissible range of the model front wheel steering angle δf_d determined by the expression 08b will be closer to zero than $-\delta f_{\max}$ as γ_d decreases (as the magnitude increases) when γ_d exceeds $-\gamma_{\max}$ onto the negative side.

[0171] Further, instead of the expressions 08a and 08b, the following expressions 11a and 11b may be used to set the upper limit value $\delta f_{\max}$ and the lower limit value $\delta f_{\min}$ of the permissible range of δf_d , and the functions $fe(\gamma_d, \gamma_{\max})$ and $fe(-\gamma_d, -\gamma_{\max})$ may be set as indicated by, for example, the solid-line and dashed-line graphs in Fig. 7.

[0172]

$$\delta f_{\max} = \delta f_{\max_c} \cdot fe(\gamma_d, \gamma_{\max}) \dots\dots \text{Expression 11a}$$

$$\delta f_{\min} = -\delta f_{\max_c} \cdot fe(-\gamma_d, -\gamma_{\max}) \dots\dots \text{Expression 11b}$$

In this example, the values of $fe(\gamma_d, \gamma_{\max})$ and $fe(-\gamma_d, -\gamma_{\max})$ are always 1 or more and change with γ_d in the same manner as those shown in Figs. 5(a) and (b). Then, $\delta f_{\max_c}$ and $\delta f_{\min_c}$ are multiplied by these values

- 91 -

of $fe(\gamma_d, \gamma_{max})$ and $fe(-\gamma_d, -\gamma_{max})$, respectively, to set the upper limit value δf_{max} and the lower limit value δf_{min} .

[0173] Further, the second limited front wheel steering angle δf_{ltd2} may be determined by, for example, the processing described below in place of setting the permissible range $[\delta f_{min}, \delta f_{max}]$ of the model front wheel steering angle δf_d by correcting δf_{max_c} on the basis of a value of the function fe . Fig. 8 is a functional block diagram for explaining the processing function.

[0174] A front wheel steering angle correction $\Delta \delta f$ for correcting the first limited front wheel steering angle δf_{ltd1} determined by the front wheel side slip angle limiter 14d is determined on the basis of the yaw rate γ_d (last time value) of the model vehicle in a processor 14g. At this time, $\Delta \delta f$ is basically determined such that the value of $\Delta \delta f$ monotonously increases on the positive side as γ_d increases on the positive side, while the value of $\Delta \delta f$ monotonously decreases on the negative side as γ_d decreases on the negative side, as shown by the graph in the processor 14g. In the graph in the processor 14g, the value of $\Delta \delta f$ is provided with an upper limit value (>0) and a lower limit value (<0). In this case, the upper limit value and the lower limit value are set such that, for example, the absolute values thereof are the same values as the fixed values fex shown in Figs. 5(a) and (b)

described above.

[0175] Subsequently, the front wheel steering angle correction $\Delta\delta f$ determined as described above is added by an adder 14h to the first limited front wheel steering angle δf_ltd1 calculated by the subtracter 14e (refer to Fig. 4) thereby to determine a first limited front wheel steering angle with input correction. In this case, if the direction of δf_ltd1 and the direction of γd are opposite from each other, then the magnitude of the first limited front wheel steering angle with input correction will be smaller than the magnitude of δf_ltd1 . However, if the direction of δf_ltd1 and the direction of γd are the same, then the magnitude of the first limited front wheel steering angle with input correction will be larger than the magnitude of δf_ltd1 .

[0176] Subsequently, the first limited front wheel steering angle with input correction is passed through the excessive centrifugal force prevention limiter 14f to determine a second limited front wheel steering angle with input correction obtained by restricting the first limited front wheel steering angle with input correction to a value within the permissible range $[\delta f\_min, \delta f\_max]$ of the model front wheel steering angle δf_d . In other words, if the first limited front wheel steering angle with input correction has a value within the permissible range, then the first limited front wheel steering angle with input correction is directly determined as the second limited

- 93 -

front wheel steering angle with input correction. Further,
if the first limited front wheel steering angle with input
correction deviates from the permissible range, then
either one of $\delta f_{\max}$ and $\delta f_{\min}$ which has a value closer
5 to the first limited front wheel steering angle with input
correction is determined as the second limited front wheel
steering angle with input correction.

[0177] In this case, the upper limit value $\delta f_{\max}(>0)$ of
the permissible range of the model front wheel steering
10 angle δf_d in the excessive centrifugal force prevention
limiter 14f is set to a value that is slightly larger than
the steering angle limit value at normal circular turn
 $\delta f_{\max_c}$ (e.g., $\delta f_{\max_c} + f_{ex}$) by taking into account the
correction of δf_{ltd1} when the direction of δf_{ltd1} and
15 the direction of γ_d are the same. Similarly, the lower
limit value $\delta f_{\min}(<0)$ of the permissible range of the
model front wheel steering angle δf_d is set such that the
absolute value thereof will be a value that is slightly
larger than $\delta f_{\max_c}$.

20 [0178] Subsequently, the front wheel steering angle
correction $\Delta \delta f$ is subtracted by a subtracter 14i from the
second limited front wheel steering angle with input
correction determined as described above, thereby
determining the second limited front wheel steering angle
25 δf_{ltd2} .

[0179] The model front wheel steering angle $\delta f_d(=$
 $\delta f_{ltd2})$ to be input to the reference dynamic

- 94 -

characteristics model 16 can be determined while preventing the centrifugal force generated in the model vehicle from becoming excessive and also preventing unwanted restriction from being placed in the countersteering state of the actual vehicle 1 even when the second limited front wheel steering angle δf_ltd2 is determined as described above.

[0180] In the present reference example 1, the processing by the front wheel side slip angle limiter 14d and the excessive centrifugal force prevention limiter 14f has been carried out to determine the model front wheel steering angle δf_d to be input to the reference dynamic characteristics model 16; however, the processing by one or both of them may be omitted. More specifically, the unlimited front wheel steering angle δf_unltd determined by the processor 14a or a value obtained by supplying the δf_unltd to the excessive centrifugal force prevention limiter 14f or the first limited front wheel steering angle δf_ltd1 determined by the subtracter 14e may be determined as the model front wheel steering angle δf_d to be input to the reference dynamic characteristics model 16.

[0181] The current time value of the model front wheel steering angle δf_d (= the current time value of δf_ltd2) determined by the reference manipulated variable determiner 14 as explained above is input to the reference dynamic characteristics model 16, and the current time values of the reference yaw rate γd and the reference

vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_d are newly determined by the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 (according to the expression 01) from the above input value and the virtual external forces F_{vir} and M_{vir} (last time values) determined by the FB distribution law 20, as will be discussed later. This processing is actually carried out according to an expression obtained by representing expression 01 in terms of a discrete-time system, so that the last time values of γ_d and β_d are also used to determine the current time values of γ_d and β_d .

[0182] In this case, the model front wheel steering angle δf_d input to the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 is restricted by the reference manipulated variable determiner 14 as previously described, thus preventing the occurrence of a spin or an extreme side slip of the model vehicle.

[0183]

[About the FB distribution law]

The details of the processing by the FB distribution law 20 will now be explained with reference to Fig. 9 to Fig. 16.

[0184] Fig. 9 is a functional block diagram showing the processing function of the FB distribution law 20. As shown in the figure, the processing function of the FB distribution law 20 is roughly constituted of a virtual external force determiner 20a which carried out the processing for determining the virtual external forces

- 96 -

Mvir and Fvir and an actuator operation FB target value determiner 20b which carries out the processing for determining an actuator operation FB target value.

[0185] Incidentally, the virtual external force

5 determiner 20a corresponds to the vehicle model operation control input determining means in the present invention. Further, the actuator operation FB target value determiner 20b is a constituent element of the actual vehicle actuator operation control input determining means in the present invention (a means for determining a feedback control input in the present invention).

[0186] First, the virtual external force determiner 20a will be explained with reference to Fig. 9. The

processing function of the virtual external force

15 determiner 20a is roughly divided into a virtual external force temporary value determiner 201 and a $\gamma\beta$ limiter 202.

[0187] In the processing by the virtual external force determiner 20a, first, temporary values Mvirtmp and

Fvirtmp of virtual external forces are determined by the virtual external force temporary value determiner 201 on the basis of state amount errors $\gamma_{err}(= \gamma_{act}-\gamma_d)$,

20 $\beta_{err}(=\beta_{act}-\beta_d)$ input from the subtracter 18. Mvirtmp of the temporary values Mvirtmp and Fvirtmp means a moment (a moment in the yaw direction) to be additionally generated about the center-of-gravity point Gd of the model vehicle of the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 in order to approximate the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} to

zero, and F_{virtmp} means a translational force (a lateral translational force of the model vehicle) to be additionally applied to the center-of-gravity point G_d of the model vehicle of the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 in order to approximate the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} to zero.

[0188] To be specific, as shown by expression 15 given below, a vector $(\gamma_{err}, \beta_{err})^T$ (the superscript T means transposition) composed of the input state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} is multiplied by a predetermined gain matrix K_{fvir} thereby to determine the temporary values M_{virtmp} and F_{virtmp} of the virtual external force (hereinafter referred to as the virtual external force temporary values M_{virtmp} and F_{virtmp}).

[0189] [Mathematical expression 5]

$$\begin{bmatrix} F_{virtmp} \\ M_{virtmp} \end{bmatrix} = K_{fvir} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \beta_{err} \\ \gamma_{err} \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{..... Expression 15}$$

where

$$K_{fvir} \equiv \begin{bmatrix} K_{fvir11} & K_{fvir12} \\ K_{fvir21} & K_{fvir22} \end{bmatrix}$$

[0190] According to the expression 15, the virtual external force temporary values M_{virtmp} and F_{virtmp} as the temporary values of control inputs to be fed back to the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 to approximate the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} to zero are determined from the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} by the feedback control law.

[0191] If it is required that the $\gamma\beta$ limiter 202, which

- 98 -

will be explained in detail below, generates an intense action for bringing β_d or β_{act} back to a predetermined permissible range only if the vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_d of the model vehicle or the
5 actual vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_{act} of the actual vehicle 1 is about to exceed or has exceeded the permissible range, then β_{err} is desirably converged to zero by a characteristic close to a primary delay characteristic with a small time constant. For this
10 purpose, for example, K_{fvir12} among gain matrix K_{fvir} components may be set to zero and K_{fvir11} may be set such that the absolute value thereof increases.

[0192] Subsequently, the $\gamma\beta$ limiter 202 carries out the processing for correcting the virtual external force
15 temporary values M_{virtmp} and F_{virtmp} so as to restrain the yaw rate γ_d and the vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_d of the model vehicle on the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 from deviating from the respective predetermined permissible ranges thereof.

[0193] More specifically, the $\gamma\beta$ limiter 202 first carries
20 out the processing by a prediction calculator 203 to predict the yaw rate γ_d and the vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_d of the model vehicle after predetermined time (after the time equivalent to a
25 predetermined number of one or more control processing cycles), and outputs those predicted values as the predicted yaw rate γ_{da} and a predicted vehicle center-of-

- 99 -

gravity point side slip angle β_{da} .

[0194] At this time, the prediction calculator 203 receives the reference yaw rate γ_d (current time value) and the reference vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_d (current time value) determined by the reference dynamic characteristics model 16, the actual traveling velocity V_{act} (current time value) detected or estimated by the sensor/estimator 12, the second limited front wheel steering angle δf_ltd2 (current time value) determined by the reference manipulated variable determiner 14, and the virtual external force temporary values M_{virtmp} and F_{virtmp} (current time values) determined as described above by the virtual external force temporary value determiner 201. Then, the prediction calculator 203 calculates the predicted yaw rate γ_{da} and the predicted vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_{da} on the basis of the expression 01 on the assumption that the model front wheel steering angle δf_d is held at the input δf_ltd2 , the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} to be applied to the model vehicle are held at the input M_{virtmp} and F_{virtmp} , and the traveling velocity V_d of the model vehicle is held at the input V_{act} .

[0195] Subsequently, the $\gamma\beta$ limiter 202 passes the γ_{da} and β_{da} calculated by the prediction calculator 203 as described above through a γ dead-zone processor 204 and a β dead-zone processor 205, respectively, to determine the

- 100 -

amounts of deviation γ_{over} and β_{over} from predetermined permissible ranges of γ_{da} and β_{da} , respectively. The graph of the γ dead-zone processor 204 shown in the figure is a graph illustrating the relationship between γ_{da} and γ_{over} ,
5 the values in the direction of the axis of abscissas related to the graph indicating the values of γ_{da} , while the values in the direction of the axis of ordinates indicating the values of γ_{over} . Similarly, the graph of the β dead-zone processor 205 shown in the figure is a
10 graph illustrating the relationship between β_{da} and β_{over} , the values in the direction of the axis of abscissas related to the graph indicating the values of β_{da} , while the values in the direction of the axis of ordinates indicating the values of β_{over} .

15 [0196] The permissible range in the γ dead-zone processor 204 is a permissible range (a permissible range of the yaw rate γ_d) having the lower limit value and the upper limit value thereof set to $\gamma_{damin}(<0)$ and $\gamma_{damax}(>0)$, respectively, and the permissible range in the β dead-zone
20 processor 205 is a permissible range (a permissible range of the vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_d) having the lower limit value and the upper limit value thereof set to $\beta_{damin}(<0)$ and $\beta_{damax}(>0)$, respectively.

[0197] In the present reference example 1, the
25 permissible range $[\gamma_{damin}, \gamma_{damax}]$ related to the yaw rate γ_d is set such that, for example, the centrifugal force generated in the model vehicle when a normal circular turn

is made while holding the traveling velocity V_d of the model vehicle at V_{act} (current time value) and also holding the yaw rate γ_d of the model vehicle at γ_{dmin} or γ_{dmax} does not exceed a limit value of a frictional force based on the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} (current time value). In other words, γ_{dmax} and γ_{dmin} are set on the basis of V_{act} (current time value) and μ_{estm} (current time value) such that expressions 16a and 16b shown below are satisfied.

10 [0198]

$m \cdot V_{act} \cdot \gamma_{dmax} < \mu_{estm} \cdot m \cdot g$ Expression 16a

$m \cdot V_{act} \cdot \gamma_{dmin} > -\mu_{estm} \cdot m \cdot g$ Expression 16b

γ_{dmax} , γ_{dmin} may be set such that, for example, the absolute value of each thereof will be the same value as the maximum yaw rate γ_{max} at a normal circular turn determined according to the expression 05 (provided $\gamma_{dmax} = \gamma_{max}$ and $\gamma_{dmin} = -\gamma_{max}$). Alternatively, however, the γ_{dmax} and γ_{dmin} may be set such that the absolute values thereof are different values from γ_{max} (e.g., values that are smaller than γ_{max}).

[0199] Incidentally, the permissible range [γ_{dmin} , γ_{dmax}] set as described above narrows as the actual traveling velocity V_{act} increases or the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} decreases.

[0200] Further, the permissible range [β_{dmin} , β_{dmax}] related to the vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip

- 102 -

angle β_d is set, for example, within a range of a vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle that maintains the relationship between the vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle of the actual vehicle 1 and the

5 translational force in the lateral direction applied to the center-of-gravity point of the actual vehicle 1 to be a substantially linear relationship (proportional relationship). In this case, β_{dmin} and β_{dmax} are desirably set on the basis of at least one of V_{act}
10 (current time value) and μ_{estm} (current time value).

[0201] Further, specifically, the processing by the γ dead-zone processor 204 sets $\gamma_{over}=0$ if an input γ_{da} is a value within a predetermined permissible range $[\gamma_{dmin}, \gamma_{dmax}]$ (if $\gamma_{dmin} \leq \gamma_{da} \leq \gamma_{dmax}$), or sets $\gamma_{over}=\gamma_{da}-\gamma_{dmin}$ if
15 $\gamma_{da} < \gamma_{dmin}$, or sets $\gamma_{over}=\gamma_{da}-\gamma_{dmax}$ if $\gamma_{da} > \gamma_{dmax}$. Thus, the amount of deviation γ_{over} of the predicted yaw rate γ_{da} from the permissible range $[\gamma_{dmin}, \gamma_{dmax}]$ is determined.

[0202] Similarly, the processing by the β dead-zone
20 processor 205 sets $\beta_{over}=0$ if the value of an input β_{da} is a value within a predetermined permissible range $[\beta_{dmin}, \beta_{dmax}]$ (if $\beta_{dmin} \leq \beta_{da} \leq \beta_{dmax}$), or sets $\beta_{over}=\beta_{da}-\beta_{dmin}$ if $\beta_{da} < \beta_{dmin}$, or sets $\beta_{over}=\beta_{da}-\beta_{dmax}$ if $\beta_{da} > \beta_{dmax}$. Thus, the amount of deviation β_{over} of the predicted vehicle
25 center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_{da} from the permissible range $[\beta_{dmin}, \beta_{dmax}]$ is determined.

[0203] Subsequently, the $\gamma\beta$ limiter 202 calculates, by a

processor 206, the temporary value manipulated variables Mvir_over and Fvir_over, which are the correction amounts of the virtual external force temporary values Mvirtmp and Fvirtmp, such that these amounts of deviation γ_{over} and β_{over} are approximated to zero.

[0204] To be more specific, as indicated by expression 17 given below, a vector $(\gamma_{over}, \beta_{over})^T$ composed of γ_{over} and β_{over} is multiplied by a predetermined gain matrix Kfov to determine Mvir_over and Fvir_over.

10 [0205] [Mathematical expression 6]

$$\begin{bmatrix} Fvir\_over \\ Mvir\_over \end{bmatrix} = Kfov \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \beta_{over} \\ \gamma_{over} \end{bmatrix} \quad \dots\dots \text{Expression 17}$$

where

$$Kfov \equiv \begin{bmatrix} Kfov11 & Kfov12 \\ Kfov21 & Kfov22 \end{bmatrix}$$

[0206] Subsequently, the $\gamma\beta$ limiter 202 subtracts the temporary value manipulated variables Mvir_over and Fvir_over from the virtual external force temporary values Mvirtmp and Fvirtmp by a subtracter 207 to determine the current time values of the virtual external forces Mvir and Fvir. In other words, the virtual external forces Mvir and Fvir are determined according to the following expressions 18a and 18b.

[0207]

$$Mvir = Mvirtmp - Mvir\_over \quad \dots\dots \text{Expression 18a}$$

$$Fvir = Fvirtmp - Fvir\_over \quad \dots\dots \text{Expression 18b}$$

The processing by the virtual external force determiner 20a is carried out as described above thereby to determine the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} such that the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} are

5 approximated to zero, while restraining the predicted yaw rate γ_{da} and the predicted vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_{da} from deviating from the permissible ranges $[\gamma_{damin}, \gamma_{damax}]$ and $[\beta_{damin}, \beta_{damax}]$, respectively.

[0208] The $\gamma\beta$ limiter 202 of the virtual external force

10 determiner 20a explained above determines the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} by correcting the virtual external force temporary values M_{virtmp} and F_{virtmp} on the basis of the temporary value manipulated variables M_{vir_over} and F_{vir_over} (more generally speaking, M_{vir} and

15 F_{vir} are determined by the linear coupling of M_{vir_over} and M_{virtmp} and the linear coupling of F_{vir_over} and F_{virtmp} , respectively). Alternatively, however, the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} may be determined as described below. Fig. 10 is a functional block diagram

20 for explaining the processing.

[0209] Referring to the figure, in this example, the processing by the virtual external force temporary value determiner 201, the prediction calculator 203, the γ dead-zone processor 204, the β dead-zone processor 205, and a

25 processor 206 is the same as that shown in Fig. 9.

Meanwhile, in the present example, the temporary value manipulated variables F_{vir_over} and M_{vir_over} determined

- 105 -

by the processor 206 are input to processors 208 and 209, respectively, and correction coefficients $Katt1(\geq 0)$ and $Katt2(\geq 0)$ for correcting the virtual external force temporary values $Mvirtmp$ and $Fvirtmp$, respectively, are determined in the processors 208 and 209. These correction coefficients $Katt1$ and $Katt2$ are correction coefficients serving as multipliers for the virtual external force temporary values $Mvirtmp$ and $Fvirtmp$, respectively. The graph related to the processor 208 shown in the figure is a graph illustrating the relationship between $Mvir\_over$ and $Katt1$, the values in the direction of the axis of abscissas related to the graph indicating the values of $Mvir\_over$ and the values in the direction of the axis of ordinates indicating the values of $Katt1$. Similarly, the graph related to the processor 209 shown in the figure is a graph illustrating the relationship between $Fvir\_over$ and $Katt2$, the values in the direction of the axis of abscissas related to the graph indicating the values of $Fvir\_over$ and the values in the direction of the axis of ordinates indicating the values of $Katt2$.

[0210] The processing by the processor 208 sets $Katt1=1$ if $Mvir\_over$ is zero and sets the value of $Katt1$ such that the value of $Katt1$ monotonously decreases from 1 to 0 as the absolute value of $Mvir\_over$ increases from zero, as shown by the graph in the figure. Further, the value of $Katt1$ is maintained at zero if the absolute value of

Mvir_over exceeds a predetermined value (a value at which Katt1 reaches zero).

[0211] Similarly, the processing by the processor 209 sets Katt2=1 if Fvir_over is zero and sets the value of Katt2 such that the value of Katt2 monotonously decreases from 1 to 0 as the absolute value of Fvir_over increases from zero, as shown by the graph in the figure. Further, the value of Katt2 is maintained at zero if the absolute value of Fvir_over exceeds a predetermined value (a value at which Katt2 reaches zero).

[0212] Subsequently, the correction coefficients Katt1 and Katt2 determined as described above are multiplied by the virtual external force temporary values Mvirtmp and Fvirtmp by multipliers 210 and 211, respectively, thereby determining the current time values of the virtual external forces Mvir and Fvir.

[0213] Thus, in the example shown in Fig. 10, the virtual external force Mvir is determined such that the magnitude of the virtual external force Mvir is narrowed (approximated to zero) relative to the virtual external force temporary value Mvirtmp as the absolute value of the amount of deviation Mvir_over increases. Similarly, the virtual external force Fvir is determined such that the magnitude of the virtual external force Mvir is narrowed (approximated to zero) relative to the virtual external force temporary value Mvirtmp as the absolute value of the amount of deviation Fvir_over increases. Thus,

determining the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} means to regard that the deviation of γ_{da} and β_{da} from their permissible ranges is attributable to the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} and to determine the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} such that the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} are approximated to zero while restraining the deviation of γ_{da} and β_{da} from their permissible ranges $[\gamma_{damin}, \gamma_{damax}]$ and $[\beta_{damin}, \beta_{damax}]$. In this case, desirably, in the reference manipulated variable determiner 14, the model front wheel steering angle δf_d to be input to the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 is limited, as described above. [0214] Further, in the $\gamma\beta$ limiter 202 explained above, the predicted yaw rate γ_{da} and the predicted vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_{da} determined using expression 01 as described above by the prediction calculator 203 are respectively defined as restriction object amounts, and these γ_{da} and β_{da} are input to the γ dead-zone processor 204 and the β dead-zone processor 205 to determine the deviation amounts γ_{over} and β_{over} . Alternatively, however, in place of γ_{da} and β_{da} , the current time values of the reference yaw rate γ_d and the reference vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_d , or the current time values of the actual yaw rate γ_{act} and the actual vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_{act} , or the values obtained by filtering these values may be used as the restriction object amounts.

[0215] For example, at each control processing cycle, the current time value of γ_d in place of γ_{da} may be input to the γ dead-zone processor 204, and a value obtained by filtering, in which a transfer function is represented in the form of $(1+T_1 \cdot s)/(1+T_2 \cdot s)$, the β_d sequentially calculated by the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 (T_1 and T_2 denoting certain time constants and s denoting a Laplace operator) may be input in place of β_{da} into the β dead-zone processor 205. In this case, if the time constants T_1 and T_2 are set such that, for example, $T_1 > T_2$, then the filtering processing functions as a so-called phase advancing compensation element. At this time, advancing the phase of a frequency component of β_d in a frequency band which is high to a certain degree and enhancing a gain relative to the frequency component make it possible to limit the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} on the basis of β_{over} before the value itself of β_d determined at each control processing cycle deviates from the permissible range $[\beta_{damin}, \beta_{damax}]$.

[0216] Further, the γ_{da} and β_{da} as the restriction object amounts may alternatively be determined as described below. In the prediction calculator 203, as shown by the following expressions 19a and 19b, an appropriate coefficient c_{ij} may be used to determine, as γ_{da} and β_{da} , the values obtained by linearly coupling the current time values of γ_d and β_d .

[0217]

- 109 -

$$\gamma_{da}=c_{11}\cdot\gamma_d+c_{12}\cdot\beta_d \dots\dots \text{Expression 19a}$$

$$\beta_{da}=c_{21}\cdot\gamma_d+c_{22}\cdot\beta_d \dots\dots \text{Expression 19b}$$

Alternatively, as shown by the following

5 expressions 20a and 20b, an appropriate coefficient c_{ij} may be used to determine, as γ_{da} and β_{da} , the values obtained by linearly coupling the current time values of γ_d , β_d , M_{virtmp} , F_{virtmp} , and δf_{ltd2} .

[0218]

$$\begin{aligned} 10 \quad \gamma_{da} &= c_{11}\cdot\gamma_d + c_{12}\cdot\beta_d \\ &\quad + c_{13}\cdot M_{virtmp} + c_{14}\cdot F_{virtmp} + c_{15}\cdot\delta f_{ltd2} \dots\dots 20a \\ \beta_{da} &= c_{21}\cdot\gamma_d + c_{22}\cdot\beta_d \\ &\quad + c_{23}\cdot M_{virtmp} + c_{24}\cdot F_{virtmp} + c_{25}\cdot\delta f_{ltd2} \dots\dots 20b \end{aligned}$$

15 These expressions 20a and 20b present more generalized representation of the processing by the prediction calculator 203 described above.

[0219] Alternatively, as shown by the following

expressions 21a and 21b, an appropriate coefficient c_{ij} may be used to determine, as γ_{da} and β_{da} , the values obtained by linearly coupling the current time values of γ_{act} and β_{act} .

[0220]

$$\begin{aligned} 25 \quad \gamma_{da} &= c_{11}\cdot\gamma_{act} + c_{12}\cdot\beta_{act} \dots\dots \text{Expression 21a} \\ \beta_{da} &= c_{21}\cdot\gamma_{act} + c_{22}\cdot\beta_{act} \dots\dots \text{Expression 21b} \end{aligned}$$

Supplementally, as is obvious from expression 02b,

if $c_{21} = -L_r/V_d$ and $c_{22} = 1$ (here, V_d denotes the traveling velocity of the model vehicle (= actual traveling velocity V_{act})), then β_{da} corresponds to the side slip angle of the rear wheel.

5 [0221] Alternatively, as shown in the following expressions 22a and 22b, an appropriate coefficient c_{ij} may be used to determine, as γ_{da} and β_{da} , the values obtained by linearly coupling the current time values of γ_d , β_d and a temporal differential value $d\beta_d/dt$ of β_d , γ_{act} ,
10 β_{act} and a temporal differential value $d\beta_{act}/dt$ of β_{act} , M_{virtmp} , F_{virtmp} , and δf_{ltd2} .

[0222]

$$\begin{aligned} \gamma_{da} = & c_{11} \cdot \gamma_d + c_{12} \cdot \beta_d + c_{13} \cdot d\beta_d/dt \\ & + c_{14} \cdot \gamma_{act} + c_{15} \cdot \beta_{act} + c_{16} \cdot d\beta_{act}/dt \\ & + c_{17} \cdot M_{virtmp} + c_{18} \cdot F_{virtmp} + c_{19} \cdot \delta f_{ltd2} \quad \dots\dots 22a \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \gamma_{da} = & c_{21} \cdot \gamma_d + c_{22} \cdot \beta_d + c_{23} \cdot d\beta_d/dt \\ & + c_{24} \cdot \gamma_{act} + c_{25} \cdot \beta_{act} + c_{26} \cdot d\beta_{act}/dt \\ & + c_{27} \cdot M_{virtmp} + c_{28} \cdot F_{virtmp} + c_{29} \cdot \delta f_{ltd2} \quad \dots\dots 22b \end{aligned}$$

20 Alternatively, the weighted mean value of the value of the computation result of the right side of expression 20a and the value of the computation result of the right side of expression 21a and the weighted mean value of the value of the computation result of the right side of expression 20b and the value of the computation
25 result of the right side of expression 21b may be determined as γ_{da} and β_{da} , respectively. This is an

- 111 -

example of the case where γ_{da} and β_{da} are determined according to expression 22a and expression 22b. The terms of M_{virtmp} and F_{virtmp} in expression 20a and expression 20b or expression 22a and expression 22b may be omitted.

5 [0223] Alternatively, the predicted values of γ_d and β_d at each control processing cycle until after predetermined time may be determined according to the expression 01 and the peak values of the determined γ_d and β_d may be determined as γ_{da} and β_{da} .

10 [0224] Further, even in the case where γ_{da} and β_{da} are determined using any of expression 20a and expression 20b, or expression 21a and expression 21b, or expression 22a and expression 22b, the coefficient c_{ij} of these expressions may be provided with a frequency
15 characteristic (in other words, the value of a variable to be multiplied by c_{ij} may be subjected to filtering by a low-pass filter or the like). Alternatively, the limitation of a temporal change rate of the variable may be placed on the value of the variable to be multiplied by
20 the coefficient c_{ij} .

[0225] Supplementally, if γ_{da} and β_{da} are determined by expression 21a and expression 21b or expression 22a and expression 22b described above, then each coefficient c_{ij} is desirably set such that the γ_{da} and β_{da} bear meanings
25 as the predicted values of the actual yaw rate γ_{act} and the actual vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_{act} of the actual vehicle 1 after predetermined time.

- 112 -

[0226] If the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 is a linear model as represented by the expression 01, then γ_{da} and β_{da} can be properly determined as the predicted values of a yaw rate and a vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle of the actual vehicle 1 or the model vehicle after predetermined time by using any of expression 20a and expression 20b, or expression 21a and expression 21b, or expression 22a and expression 22b.

[0227] If the current time values of γ_{act} and β_{act} or the values obtained by filtering γ_{act} and β_{act} are used in place of γ_{da} and β_{da} , or if γ_{da} and β_{da} are determined by expression 21a and expression 21b or expression 22a and expression 22b described above, then the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} will be determined such that the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} are approximated to zero while restraining the current time values or filtered values or predicted values of the actual yaw rate γ_{act} and the actual vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_{act} of the actual vehicle 1 from deviating from the permissible ranges $[\gamma_{damin}, \gamma_{damax}]$ and $[\beta_{damin}, \beta_{damax}]$, respectively.

[0228] Supplementally, more generally, the processing by the virtual external force determiner 20a may determine the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} according to expression 200 given below.

[0229] [Mathematical expression 7]

$$\begin{bmatrix} F_{vir} \\ M_{vir} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} K_{fb11} & K_{fb12} & K_{fb13} & K_{fb14} & K_{fb15} & K_{fb16} \\ K_{fb21} & K_{fb22} & K_{fb23} & K_{fb24} & K_{fb25} & K_{fb26} \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \beta_d \\ \gamma_d \\ \beta_{act} \\ \gamma_{act} \\ \beta_{over} \\ \gamma_{over} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} K_{fb\_ \delta 1} \\ K_{fb\_ \delta 2} \end{bmatrix} \cdot \delta f_{ltd2} \quad \text{..... Expression 200}$$

[0230] Further, in the γ dead-zone processor 204 and the β dead-zone processor 205 of the $\gamma\beta$ limiter 202, the amounts of deviation γ_{over} and β_{over} have been determined by separately setting the permissible ranges $[\gamma_{damin}, \gamma_{damax}]$ and $[\beta_{damin}, \beta_{damax}]$ of γ_{da} and β_{da} , respectively; alternatively, however, a permissible range (permissible area) for a pair of γ_{da} and β_{da} may be set by considering the correlativity between γ_{da} and β_{da} , to determine the amounts of deviation γ_{over} and β_{over} .

[0231] For example, as shown in Fig. 11, an area A (a parallelogram area) enclosed by straight lines 1 to 4 on a coordinate plane having γ_{da} on the axis of abscissa and β_{da} on the axis of ordinates is set as a permissible area A for a pair of γ_{da} and β_{da} . In this case, the straight lines 1 and 3 are the straight lines that define a lower limit value and an upper limit value, respectively, of γ_{da} . The the lower limit value and the upper limit value are set, for example, in the same manner as that for the lower limit value γ_{damin} and the upper limit value γ_{damax} of the permissible range $[\gamma_{damin}, \gamma_{damax}]$ in the γ dead-zone

processor 204. The straight lines 2 and 4 are the straight lines that define a lower limit value and an upper limit value, respectively, of β_{da} . In this example, the setting is made such that the lower limit value and the upper limit value, respectively, linearly change according to γ_{da} . Further, the amounts of deviation γ_{over} and β_{over} are determined, for example, as follows. If the pair of γ_{da} and β_{da} exists within the permissible area A, as indicated by a point P1 in Fig. 11, then $\gamma_{over}=\beta_{over}=0$. On the other hand, if the pair of γ_{da} and β_{da} deviates from the permissible area A, as indicated by, for example, a point P2 in Fig. 11, then a point P3 on the boundary of the permissible area A that is closest to the point P2 among the points on the straight line 5 which passes the point P2 and has a predetermined inclination (a point P3 closest to P2 among the points existing on a straight line 5 in the permissible area A) is determined. Then, the difference between the value of γ_{da} at the point P2 and the value of γ_{da} at the point P3 is determined as the amount of deviation γ_{over} , and the difference between the value of β_{da} at the point P2 and the value of β_{da} at the point P3 is determined as the amount of deviation β_{over} . If a point associated with the pair of γ_{da} and β_{da} is, for example, a point P4 shown in Fig. 11, i.e., if a straight line 6 having a predetermined inclination (the same inclination as that of the straight line 5) to pass the point P4 associated with the pair of γ_{da} and β_{da} does not

intersect with the permissible area A (if no point in the permissible range A exists on the straight line 6), then a point P5 on the boundary of the permissible area A that is closest to the straight line 6 is determined. Then, the difference between the value of γ_{da} at the point P4 and the value of γ_{da} at the point P5 may be determined as the amount of deviation γ_{over} , and the difference between the value of β_{da} at the point P4 and the value of β_{da} at the point P5 may be determined as the amount of deviation β_{over} .

[0232] Supplementally, the permissible area of the pair of γ_{da} and β_{da} does not have to be a parallelogram area, and it may alternatively be, for example, an area A' having smoothly shaped boundary portions (shaped with no angular portions), as indicated by the dashed line in Fig. 11.

[0233] Further, in the $\gamma\beta$ limiter 202, the amounts of deviation γ_{over} and β_{over} from $[\gamma_{damin}, \gamma_{damax}]$ and $[\beta_{damin}, \beta_{damax}]$ have been determined on both γ_{da} and β_{da} , and then the temporary values M_{virtmp} and F_{virtmp} have been corrected on the basis thereof; alternatively, however, the temporary values M_{virtmp} and F_{virtmp} may be corrected on the basis of only one of γ_{over} and β_{over} . In this case, the processing by the processor 206 may determine the temporary value manipulated variables M_{vir_over} and F_{vir_over} by fixing the value of either one of γ_{over} and β_{over} to zero.

[0234]

Next, the processing by the actuator operation FB target value determiner 20b will be explained with reference to Fig. 12 to Fig. 14. In the following
5 explanation, the wheels W1 to W4 may be referred to as an n-th wheel Wn (n=1, 2, 3, 4).

[0235] Fig. 12 is a functional block diagram showing the processing by the actuator operation FB target value determiner 20b. Referring to the figure, the actuator
10 operation FB target value determiner 20b first determines in a processor 220 a feedback yaw moment basic required value Mfbdmd, which is a basic required value of a moment in the yaw direction to be generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 in order to bring
15 the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} close to zero on the basis of received state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} , as the basic required value of a feedback control input to the actuator device 3 of the actual vehicle 1.

[0236] Mfbdmd is determined according to a feedback
20 control law from the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} . More specifically, as indicated by expression 23 given below, a vector $(\beta_{err}, \gamma_{err})^T$ composed of β_{err} and γ_{err} is multiplied by a predetermined gain matrix Kfbdmd (by linearly coupling β_{err} and γ_{err}), thereby determining
25 Mfbdmd.

[0237] [Mathematical expression 8]

$$M_{fbdmd} = K_{fbdmd} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \beta_{err} \\ \gamma_{err} \end{bmatrix} \dots\dots \text{Expression 23}$$

where

$$K_{fbdmd} \equiv \begin{bmatrix} K_{fbdmd1} & K_{fbdmd2} \end{bmatrix}$$

[0238] Alternatively, M_{fbdmd} may be determined on the basis of β_{err} , γ_{err} and a first-order differential value $d\beta_{err}/dt$ of β_{err} . For example, a vector composed of β_{err} , γ_{err} and $d\beta_{err}/dt$ may be multiplied by an appropriate gain matrix (by linearly coupling β_{err} , γ_{err} , and $d\beta_{err}/dt$ by an appropriate coefficient) so as to determine M_{fbdmd} .

[0239] Alternatively, at least one of elements K_{fbdmd1} and K_{fbdmd2} of the gain matrix K_{fbdmd} may be multiplied by a phase compensating element whose transfer function is expressed by $(1+T_{c1}s)/(1+T_{c2}s)$. For instance, K_{fbdmd1} , which is a multiplier for β_{err} , may be multiplied by the phase compensating element, and the values of time constants T_{c1} and T_{c2} may be set such that $T_{c1} > T_{c2}$. In such a case, the term obtained by multiplying K_{fbdmd1} by β_{err} will be equivalent to the result obtained by passing β_{err} and a differential value thereof, which have been linearly coupled, through a high-cut filter.

[0240] Subsequently, the actuator operation FB target value determiner 20b passes the M_{fbdmd} through a dead-zone processor 221 to determine a dead zone excess feedback yaw moment required value M_{fbdmd_a} . The graph of the dead zone processor 221 in the figure is a graph illustrating

the relationship between M_{fbdmd} and M_{fbdmd_a} , the values in the direction of the axis of abscissas related to the graph indicating the values of M_{fbdmd} , while the values in the direction of the axis of ordinates indicating the values of M_{fbdmd_a} .

[0241] According to the present reference example 1, in the feedback control of the actuator devices 3 of the actual vehicle 1, mainly the braking device of the driving/braking device 3A among the actuator devices 3 is operated to approximate the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} to zero. In this case, if the braking device is operated on the basis of M_{fbdmd} determined as described above, there is a danger that the braking device will be frequently operated. To prevent this, according to the present reference example 1, the braking device is operated on the basis of the dead zone excess feedback yaw moment required value M_{fbdmd_a} obtained by passing M_{fbdmd} through the dead zone processor 221.

[0242] To be more specific, the processing by the dead zone processor 221 is carried out as follows. The dead zone processor 221 sets $M_{fbdmd\_a}=0$ if the value of M_{fbdmd} exists in a predetermined dead zone established in the vicinity of zero. Further, the dead zone processor 221 sets $M_{fbdmd\_a}=M_{fbdmd}$ - upper limit value if M_{fbdmd} is larger than an upper limit value (>0) of the dead zone, while the dead zone processor 221 sets $M_{fbdmd\_a}=M_{fbdmd}$ - lower limit value if M_{fbdmd} is smaller than a lower limit

- 119 -

value (<0) of the dead zone. In other words, an excess from the dead zone of $M_{fbdm\bar{d}}$ is determined as $M_{fbdm\bar{d}}_a$. Operating the braking device of the driving/braking device 3A on the basis of $M_{fbdm\bar{d}}_a$ determined as described above makes it possible to operate the braking device such that the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} are approximated to zero, while restraining frequent operation of the braking device based on the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} . The processing of the dead zone processor 221 may be omitted, and $M_{fbdm\bar{d}}$ may be directly determined as $M_{fbdm\bar{d}}_a$.

[0243] Subsequently, an actuator operation FB target value distribution processor 222 carries out processing for determining the actuator operation FB target value (a feedback control input to an actuator device 3) on the basis of the dead zone excess feedback yaw moment required value $M_{fbdm\bar{d}}_a$.

[0244] The processing by the actuator operation FB target value distribution processor 222 will be schematically explained. The actuator operation FB target value distribution processor 222 determines an FB target n -th wheel brake driving/braking force $F_{x_{fbdm\bar{d}}_n}$ ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$), which is a feedback target value of the driving/braking force of the wheels $W1$ to $W4$ by an operation of the braking device of the driving/braking device 3A (a feedback control input to the braking device to approximate γ_{err} and β_{err} to zero), such that $M_{fbdm\bar{d}}_a$ is generated about the center-of-gravity point of the actual

- 120 -

vehicle 1 (consequently to approximate γ_{err} and β_{err} to zero). Alternatively, in addition to $F_{x\text{fbdmd}_n}$ ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$), an active steering FB target lateral force $F_{y\text{fbdmd}_f}$, which is a feedback target value of the lateral forces of the front wheels W1 and W2 by an operation of the steering device 3B, is determined.

[0245] In this case, according to the present reference example 1, if the dead zone excess feedback yaw moment required value M_{fbdmd_a} indicates a moment in the positive direction (a moment in the counterclockwise direction as observed from above the actual vehicle 1), then basically, the driving/braking force of the left wheels W1 and W3 of the actual vehicle 1 is increased in the braking direction thereby to determine the FB target n -th wheel brake driving/braking force $F_{x\text{fbdmd}_n}$ ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) such that M_{fbdmd_a} is generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1. Further, at this time, an FB target first wheel brake driving/braking force $F_{x\text{fbdmd}_1}$ and an FB target third wheel brake driving/braking force $F_{x\text{fbdmd}_3}$ related to the left wheels W1 and W3 for generating M_{fbdmd_a} about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 are determined such that the relationship between the changes in each thereof and the changes in M_{fbdmd_a} is a proportional relationship.

Hereinafter, the ratios of changes in $F_{x\text{fbdmd}_1}$ and $F_{x\text{fbdmd}_3}$, respectively, to the changes in M_{fbdmd_a} in the proportional relationship will be referred to as a front

- 121 -

wheel gain GA1 and a rear wheel gain GA3, respectively.

In the reference example 1, if Mfbdmd_a is a moment in the positive direction, then Fxfbdmd_1 and Fxfbdmd_3 are determined to be the values obtained by multiplying Mfbdmd_a by GA1 and GA3, respectively, (values that are proportional to Mfbdmd_a).

[0246] If Mfbdmd_a is a moment in the negative direction (a moment in the clockwise direction as observed from above the actual vehicle 1), then basically, the FB target n-th wheel brake driving/braking force Fxfbdmd_n (n=1, 2, 3, 4) is determined such that the driving/braking force of the right wheels W1 and W3 of the actual vehicle 1 is increased in the braking direction thereby to generate Mfbdmd_a about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1. Further, at this time, an FB target second wheel brake driving/braking force Fxfbdmd_2 and an FB target fourth wheel brake driving/braking force Fxfbdmd_4 related to the right wheels W2 and W4 for generating Mfbdmd_a about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 are determined such that the relationship between the changes of each thereof and the changes in Mfbdmd_a is a proportional relationship. Hereinafter, the ratios of changes in Fxfbdmd_2 and Fxfbdmd_4, respectively, to changes in Mfbdmd_a in the proportional relationship will be referred to as a front wheel gain GA2 and a rear wheel gain GA4. In the reference example 1, if Mfbdmd_a is a moment in the negative direction, then Fxfbdmd_2 and

Fxfbdmd₄ are determined to be the values obtained by multiplying Mfbdmd_a by GA₂ and GA₄, respectively, (values that are proportional to Mfbdmd_a).

[0247] In the following explanation, as shown in Fig. 13,

5 the interval between the front wheels W₁ and W₂ (i.e., the tread of the front wheels W₁ and W₂) of the actual vehicle 1 is denoted by d_f , and the interval between the rear

wheels W₃ and W₄ (i.e., the tread of the rear wheels W₃ and W₄) is denoted by d_r , and the actual steering angle of

10 the front wheels W₁ and W₂ (the actual front wheel steering angle) is denoted by δf_{act} . The distance

between an n-th wheel W_n and the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 in the direction orthogonal to the longitudinal direction of the n-th wheel W_n (in the

15 direction orthogonal on a horizontal plane) when the actual vehicle 1 is observed from above is denoted by L_n ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$). In the present reference example 1,

although the rear wheels W₃ and W₄ are not shown because they are non-steering control wheels, the actual steering

20 angle of the rear wheels W₃ and W₄ (actual rear wheel steering angle) is denoted by δr_{act} . In the present reference example 1, $\delta r_{act}=0$ and $L_3=L_4=d_r/2$.

[0248] L_f in Fig. 13 denotes the distance in the

longitudinal direction between the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 and the axle of the front wheels W₁ and W₂, and L_r denotes the distance in the longitudinal direction between the center-of-gravity point G of the

- 123 -

actual vehicle 1 and the axle of the rear wheels W3 and W4. The values of these L_f and L_r are the same as the values of L_f and L_r related to the model vehicle shown in Fig. 3 described above.

5 [0249] The processing by the actuator operation FB target value distribution processor 222 will be specifically explained below. First, it is assumed that the actual vehicle 1 is in a traveling-straight state (a traveling state in which $\delta f_{act}=0$), and an n-th wheel
 10 driving/braking force full required value $Fx_{fullfbdmd\_n}$, which is the driving/braking force of the n-th wheel W_n ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) required to generate a moment in the yaw direction that is equal to M_{fbdmd_a} about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 in the traveling-
 15 straight state is respectively determined by a processor 222a_n ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$).

[0250] To be more specific, $Fx_{fullfbdmd\_n}$ ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) is determined in each processor 222a_n by the multiplication calculation of the following expressions
 20 24a to 24d.

[0251]

$$Fx_{fullfbdmd\_1} = -(2/df) \cdot M_{fbdmd\_a} \dots\dots \text{Expression 24a}$$

$$Fx_{fullfbdmd\_2} = (2/df) \cdot M_{fbdmd\_a} \dots\dots \text{Expression 24b}$$

$$Fx_{fullfbdmd\_3} = -(2/dr) \cdot M_{fbdmd\_a} \dots\dots \text{Expression 24c}$$

$$25 \quad Fx_{fullfbdmd\_4} = (2/dr) \cdot M_{fbdmd\_a} \dots\dots \text{Expression 24d}$$

Subsequently, the actuator operation FB target

value distribution processor 222 determines a first wheel distribution ratio correction value $K1\_str$ and a second wheel distribution ratio correction value $K2\_str$ in processors 222b_1 and 222b_2, respectively, on the basis of the actual front wheel steering angle δf_act , and also determines a third wheel distribution ratio correction value $K3\_str$ and a fourth wheel distribution ratio correction value $K4\_str$ in processors 222b_3 and 222b_4, respectively, on the basis of the actual rear wheel steering angle δr_act . These respective n-th wheel distribution ratio correction values $Kn\_str(n=1, 2, 3, 4)$ are correction coefficients whereby $Fxfullfbdmd\_n$ is multiplied.

[0252] Here, as the actual front wheel steering angle δf_act changes from zero, the driving/braking forces of the first wheel W1 and the second wheel W2 that generate a moment in the yaw direction equivalent to $Mfbdmd\_a$ about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 change from $Fxfullfbdmd\_1$ and $Fxfullfbdmd\_2$ determined according to the aforesaid expressions 24a and 24b, respectively. Similarly, if the rear wheels W3 and W4 are steering control wheels, then as the actual rear wheel steering angle δr_act changes from zero, the driving/braking forces of the third wheel W3 and the fourth wheel W4 that generate a moment in the yaw direction equivalent to $Mfbdmd\_a$ about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 change from

Fxfullfbdmd₃ and Fxfullfbdmd₄ determined according to the expressions 24c and 24d, respectively. The n-th wheel distribution ratio correction value Kn_str is basically a correction coefficient for determining the driving/braking force of the n-th wheel Wn that generates a moment in the yaw direction equal or close to Mfbdmd_a about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 by correcting Fxfullfbdmd_n (n= 1, 2, 3, 4) by taking such influences of a steering angle into account.

[0253] In the present reference example 1, however, the rear wheels W3 and W4 are non-steering control wheels, so that δr_{act} is always zero. Hence, K3_str and K4_str are in fact always set to "1." Therefore, the processors 222b₃ and 222b₄ may be omitted.

[0254] Meanwhile, K1_str and K2_str related to the front wheels W1 and W2 are determined as described below by the processors 222b₁ and 222b₂, respectively. First, the values of L1 and L2 shown in Fig. 13 are calculated by the geometric calculation of expressions 25a and 25b shown below from values of df and Lf, which are set beforehand, and a value of δf_{act} . As the value of δf_{act} in the calculation, a value (current time value) detected or estimated by the sensor/estimator 12 may be used, or alternatively, a last time value of a target value (a target value finally determined at each control processing cycle) of a steering angle of the front wheels W1 and W2 of the actual vehicle 1 may be used. Further, if the

steering device 3B is a mechanical steering device, then the value may be determined from an overall steering ratio of the mechanical steering device and the steering angle θ_h in the drive operation inputs. Alternatively, a current time value of the unlimited front wheel steering angle δf_unltd determined by the processor 14a of the reference manipulated variable determiner 14 may be used. [0255]

$$L1=(df/2)\cdot\cos\delta f\_act-Lf\cdot\sin\delta f\_act \dots\dots \text{Expression 25a}$$

$$L2=(df/2)\cdot\cos\delta f\_act+Lf\cdot\sin\delta f\_act \dots\dots \text{Expression 25b}$$

Here, the result obtained by multiplying the driving/braking force of each of the front wheels W1 and W2 by L1 and L2, respectively, provides the moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1. Therefore, basically, the driving/braking forces of the front wheels W1 and W2 for generating a moment in the yaw direction that is equal to M_{fbdm_a} about the center-of-gravity point G can be determined by multiplying $F_{xfullfbdm\_1}$ and $F_{xfullfbdm\_2}$ by $K1\_str=(df/2)/L1$ and $K2\_str=(df/2)/L2$, respectively. [0256] Doing as described above, however, tends to cause $K1\_str$ or $K2\_str$ to become excessive when L1 or L2 is small and to cause the overall feedback loop gain of the actual vehicle 1 based on the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} to become excessive, frequently resulting in an oscillation of a control system or the like.

- 127 -

[0257] In the present reference example 1, therefore, K1_str and K2_str are determined according to the following expressions 26a and 26b.

[0258]

5 K1_str=(df/2)/max(L1, Lmin) Expression 26a

 K2_str=(df/2)/max(L2, Lmin) Expression 26b

 Here, in expression 26a and expression 26b, max(a,b) (a and b denote general variables) denotes a
10 function for outputting a value of the variable a or b, whichever is larger, and Lmin denotes a positive constant that is smaller than df/2. This has prevented K1_str and K2_str from becoming excessive. In other words, according to the present reference example 1, (df/2)/Lmin(>1) is
15 defined as the upper limit value of K1_str and K2_str, and K1_str and K2_str are set at the upper limit value or less on the basis of the actual front wheel steering angle δf_{act} .

[0259] In the present reference example 1, since the rear wheels W3 and W4 are non-steering control wheels,
20 K3_str=K4_str=1, as described above. If, however, the rear wheels W3 and W4 are steering control wheels, then K3_str and K4_str are desirably set on the basis of the actual rear wheel steering angle δr_{act} in the same manner as that for setting K1_str and K2_str on the basis of the
25 actual front wheel steering angle δf_{act} as described above.

[0260] Subsequently, the actuator operation FB target

value distribution processor 222 determines the n-th wheel distribution gain K_n in the processor 222c_n(n=1, 2, 3, 4) on the basis of the actual front wheel side slip angle β_{f_act} (current time value) or the actual rear wheel side slip angle β_{r_act} (current time value). This K_n is a correction coefficient (a positive value that is smaller than 1) for correcting $F_{xfullfbdmd\_n}$ by multiplying the n-th wheel driving/braking force full required value $F_{xfullfbdmd\_n}$ by K_n .

[0261] In this case, the n-th wheel distribution gain K_n is determined as described below in each processor 222c_n.

[0262] A first wheel distribution gain K_1 and a third wheel distribution gain K_3 related to the first wheel W_1 and the third wheel W_3 , which are longitudinally disposed on the left side of the actual vehicle 1, are determined such that the gains virtually continuously change on the basis of β_{f_act} and β_{r_act} , as shown by the solid-line graphs in Figs. 14(a) and (b), respectively. Further, a second wheel distribution gain K_2 and a fourth wheel distribution gain K_4 related to the second wheel W_2 and the fourth wheel W_4 , which are longitudinally disposed on the right side of the actual vehicle 1, are determined such that the gains virtually continuously change on the basis of β_{f_act} and β_{r_act} , as shown by the dashed-line graphs in Figs. 14(a) and (b), respectively. Incidentally, any one value of K_n is a positive value that is smaller than 1. Further, "virtually continuously" means that a

jump (quantization) of a value that inevitably occurs when an analog quantity is expressed in terms of a discrete system does not impair the continuity of the analog quantity.

5 [0263] In this case, more specifically, regarding the first wheel distribution gain $K1$ and the third wheel distribution gain $K3$, $K1$ is determined on the basis of a value of βf_{act} such that it monotonously increases from a predetermined lower limit value to a predetermined upper
10 limit value as βf_{act} increases from a negative value to a positive value, as shown by the solid-line graph in Fig. 14(a). Hence, $K1$ is determined such that, when βf_{act} takes a positive value, it takes a larger value than that when βf_{act} takes a negative value.

15 [0264] Meanwhile, $K3$ is determined on the basis of a value of βr_{act} such that it monotonously decreases from a predetermined upper limit value to a predetermined lower limit value as βr_{act} increases from a negative value to a positive value, as shown by the solid-line graph in Fig.
20 14(b). Hence, $K3$ is determined such that, when βr_{act} takes a negative value, $K3$ takes a larger value than that when βr_{act} takes a positive value.

[0265] The solid-line graphs in Figs. 14(a) and (b) are set such that the sum of the values of $K1$ and $K3$
25 corresponding to βf_{act} and βr_{act} becomes substantially one when βf_{act} and βr_{act} agree or substantially agree with each other.

[0266] Further, regarding the second wheel distribution gain K_2 and the fourth wheel distribution gain K_4 , K_2 is determined on the basis of a value of β_{f_act} such that it monotonously decreases from a predetermined upper limit value to a predetermined lower limit value as β_{f_act} increases from a negative value to a positive value, as shown by the dashed-line graph in Fig. 14(a). In this case, the dashed-line graph indicating a relationship between K_2 and β_{f_act} is identical to the graph obtained by laterally reversing the solid-line graph indicating a relationship between K_1 and β_{f_act} around the axis of ordinates (the line of $\beta_{f\_act}=0$). Hence, the value of K_2 at each value of β_{f_act} is determined such that it is equal to the value of K_1 at the value obtained by reversing the positive/negative of β_{f_act} .

[0267] Further, K_4 is determined on the basis of a value of β_{r_act} such that it monotonously increases from a predetermined lower limit value to a predetermined upper limit value as β_{r_act} increases from a negative value to a positive value, as shown by the dashed-line graph in Fig. 14(b). In this case, the dashed-line graph indicating the relationship between K_4 and β_{r_act} is identical to a graph obtained by laterally reversing the solid-line graph indicating the relationship between K_3 and β_{r_act} around the axis of ordinates (the line of $\beta_{r\_act}=0$). Hence, the value of K_4 at each value of β_{r_act} is determined such that it is equal to the value of K_3 at the value obtained

by reversing the positive/negative of β_{r_act} .

[0268] By determining the n-th wheel distribution gain K_n ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) as described above, in a situation wherein β_{f_act} and β_{r_act} take virtually the same value, such as when the actual vehicle 1 is in a normal traveling mode, the ratio of the first wheel distribution gain K_1 corresponding to the front wheel W1 to the third wheel distribution gain K_2 corresponding to the rear wheel W3 right behind the front wheel W1 will monotonously change as β_{f_act} and β_{r_act} change while maintaining the sum of K_1 and K_3 to be substantially constant. Similarly, the ratio of the second wheel distribution gain K_2 corresponding to the front wheel W2 to the fourth wheel distribution gain K_4 corresponding to the rear wheel W4 right behind the front wheel W2 will monotonously change as β_{f_act} and β_{r_act} change while maintaining the sum of K_2 and K_4 to be substantially constant.

[0269] The reason for determining the n-th wheel distribution gain K_n ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) on the basis of β_{f_act} and β_{r_act} as described above will be discussed later.

[0270] Supplementally, in the present reference example 1, β_{f_act} and β_{r_act} are used as a front wheel gain adjustment parameter and a rear wheel adjustment parameter, and on the basis thereon, the n-th wheel distribution gain K_n is changed as described above. Thus, as will be described later, the front wheel gains GA1 and GA2 are changed on the basis of β_{f_act} serving as the front wheel gain

adjustment parameter, and the rear wheel gains GA3 and GA4 are changed on the basis of β_{r_act} serving as the rear wheel gain adjustment parameter. In this case, β_{f_act} has a meaning as a state amount related to lateral motions of the front wheels W1 and W2, and β_{r_act} has a meaning as a state amount related to lateral motions of the rear wheels W3 and W4. To determine the n-th wheel distribution gain $K_n(n=1, 2)$ related to the front wheels W1 and W2, respectively, β_{f_act} detected or estimated for each of the front wheels W1 and W2 may be used; alternatively, however, β_{f_act} detected or estimated on either one of the front wheels W1 or W2, or a mean value of β_{f_act} detected or estimated for each of the front wheels W1 and W2 may be defined as a representative value of actual front wheel side slip angles, and both the distribution gains K1 and K2 may be determined on the basis of the representative value. This applies also when determining the distribution gains K3 and k4 related to the rear wheels W3 and W4.

[0271] After determining K_{n_str} and $K_n(n=1, 2, 3, 4)$ as described above, the actuator operation FB target value distribution processor 222 multiplies each n-th wheel driving/braking force full required value $F_{xfullfbdmd\_n}(n=1, 2, 3, 4)$ by K_{n_str} and K_n by the processors 222b_n and 222c_n, respectively, thereby determining the n-th wheel distribution driving/braking force basic value F_{xfb_n} . In other words, the n-th wheel distribution

driving/braking force basic values F_{xfb_n} ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) are determined according to the following expressions 27a to 27d.

[0272]

5 $F_{xfb\_1} = F_{xfullfbdmd\_1} \cdot K1\_str \cdot K1$ Expression 27a
 $F_{xfb\_2} = F_{xfullfbdmd\_2} \cdot K2\_str \cdot K2$ Expression 27b
 $F_{xfb\_3} = F_{xfullfbdmd\_3} \cdot K3\_str \cdot K3$ Expression 27c
 $F_{xfb\_4} = F_{xfullfbdmd\_4} \cdot K4\_str \cdot K4$ Expression 27d

10 When F_{xfb_n} ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) is determined as
 described above, if $M_{fbdmd\_a} > 0$, then F_{xfb_1} and F_{xfb_3}
 associated with the left wheels W1 and W3 provide a
 driving/braking force in a braking direction (a negative
 driving/braking force), while F_{xfb_2} and F_{xfb_4} associated
 15 with the right wheels W2 and W4 provide a driving/braking
 force in a driving direction (a positive driving/braking
 force). Further, if $M_{fbdmd\_a} < 0$, then F_{xfb_1} and F_{xfb_3}
 associated with the left wheels W1 and W3 provide a
 driving/braking force in the driving direction (a positive
 20 driving/braking force), while F_{xfb_2} and F_{xfb_4} associated
 with the right wheels W2 and W4 provide a driving/braking
 force in the braking direction (a negative driving/braking
 force). Further, any one of the n-th wheel distribution
 driving/braking force basic value F_{xfb_n} will be
 25 proportional to M_{fbdmd_a} .

[0273] Subsequently, the actuator operation FB target
 value distribution processor 222 passes the n-th wheel

distribution driving/braking force basic value F_{xfb_n} ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$), which has been determined as described above, through a limiter 222d_n associated with each n-th wheel W_n thereby to determine respective FB target n-th wheel
5 brake driving/braking force F_{xfbmd_n} , which is the feedback target value of the driving/braking force of the n-th wheel W_n by an operation of the braking device of the driving/braking device 3A.

[0274] Here, the graphs of the limiters 222d_n ($n=1, 2, 3,$
10 4) in Fig. 12 are graphs showing the relationships between F_{xfb_n} and F_{xfbmd_n} , the values in the direction of the axis of abscissas related to the graphs indicating the values of F_{xfb_n} , while the values in the direction of the axis of ordinates indicating the values of F_{xfbmd_n} .

[0275] The limiter 222d_n outputs F_{xfb_n} directly as F_{xfbmd_n} without processing it only if the value of F_{xfb_n} input thereto is zero or a negative value, and if F_{xfb_n} takes a positive value, then the value of F_{xfbmd_n} to be output is set to zero independently of the value of
15 F_{xfb_n} . In other words, F_{xfbmd_n} is determined by limiting F_{xfb_n} with zero being an upper limit value.

[0276] Determining the FB target n-th wheel brake driving/braking force F_{xfbmd_n} , respectively, as described above determines the FB target n-th wheel brake
20 driving/braking force F_{xfbmd_n} ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) such that the driving/braking forces of the left wheels $W1$ and $W3$ of the actual vehicle 1 are increased in the braking

- 135 -

direction (to set $F_{x\text{fbdmd\_1}} < 0$ and $F_{x\text{fbdmd\_3}} < 0$) if $M_{\text{fbdmd\_a}} > 0$, as described above, thereby to generate $M_{\text{fbdmd\_a}}$ about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1. In this case, for the right wheels W2 and W4, $F_{x\text{fbdmd\_2}} = F_{x\text{fbdmd\_4}} = 0$ in the present reference example 1. [0277] Further, $F_{x\text{fbdmd\_1}}$ and $F_{x\text{fbdmd\_3}}$ related to the left wheels W1 and W3 in this case are equal to $F_{x\text{fb\_1}}$ and $F_{x\text{fb\_3}}$ determined according to the aforesaid expressions 27a and 27c, respectively. Therefore, $F_{x\text{fbdmd\_1}}$ and $F_{x\text{fbdmd\_3}}$ related to the left wheels W1 and W3 in the case where $M_{\text{fbdmd\_a}} > 0$ are respectively proportional to $M_{\text{fbdmd\_a}}$. Consequently, the relationship between changes in $M_{\text{fbdmd\_a}}$ and changes in $F_{x\text{fbdmd\_1}}$ and $F_{x\text{fbdmd\_3}}$ will be a proportional relationship. Further, in this case, as is obvious from the expression 24a and expression 27a, the front wheel gain GA_1 related to the front wheel W1 is proportional to K_1 , because $GA_1 = -(2/df) \cdot K_{1\_str} \cdot K_1$. And, this K_1 is determined such that it changes on the basis of the actual front wheel side slip angle β_{f_act} as the front wheel gain adjustment parameter, as described above, so that the front wheel gain GA_1 will also change on the basis of β_{f_act} . Hence, $F_{x\text{fbdmd\_1}}$ is determined such that the relationship between changes in $M_{\text{fbdmd\_a}}$ and changes in $F_{x\text{fbdmd\_1}}$ will be a proportional relationship and that the front wheel gain GA_1 in the proportional relationship changes on the basis of β_{f_act} used as the front wheel gain adjustment parameter. Similarly, as is obvious from

the expression 24c and expression 27c, the rear wheel gain GA3 related to the rear wheel W3 is proportional to K3, because $GA3 = -(2/dr) \cdot K3\_str \cdot K3$. And, this K3 is determined such that it changes on the basis of the actual rear wheel side slip angle β_{r_act} serving as the rear wheel gain adjustment parameter, as described above, so that the rear wheel gain GA3 will also change on the basis of β_{r_act} . Hence, Fxfbdmd_3 is determined such that the relationship between changes in Mfbdmd_a and changes in Fxfbdmd_3 will be a proportional relationship and that the rear wheel gain GA3 in the proportional relationship changes on the basis of β_{r_act} serving as the rear wheel gain adjustment parameter.

[0278] Further, the FB target n-th wheel brake driving/braking force Fxfbdmd_n (n=1, 2, 3, 4) is determined such that the driving/braking forces of the right wheels W2 and W4 of the actual vehicle 1 are increased in the braking direction (to set $Fxfbdmd\_2 < 0$ and $Fxfbdmd\_4 < 0$) if $Mfbdmd\_a < 0$, thereby generating Mfbdmd_a about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1. In this case, for the left wheels W1 and W3, $Fxfbdmd\_1 = Fxfbdmd\_3 = 0$ in the present reference example 1.

[0279] Further, Fxfbdmd_2 and Fxfbdmd_4 related to the right wheels W2 and W4 in this case are equal to Fxfb_2 and Fxfb_4 determined according to the expressions 27b and 27d, respectively. Therefore, Fxfbdmd_2 and Fxfbdmd_4 related to the right wheels W2 and W4 in the case where

$M_{fbdmd\_a} < 0$ are respectively proportional to M_{fbdmd_a} .

Furthermore, the relationship between changes in M_{fbdmd_a} and changes in $F_{x fbdmd\_2}$ and $F_{x fbdmd\_4}$ will be a

proportional relationship. Further, in this case, as is

5 obvious from the expression 24b and the expression 27b,

the front wheel gain GA_2 related to the front wheel W_2 is

proportional to K_2 , because $GA_2 = (2/df) \cdot K_{2\_str} \cdot K_2$. And,

this K_2 is determined such that it changes on the basis of the actual front wheel side slip angle β_{f_act} as the front

10 wheel gain adjustment parameter, as described above, so

that the front wheel gain GA_2 will also change on the

basis of β_{f_act} . Hence, $F_{x fbdmd\_2}$ is determined such that

the relationship between changes in M_{fbdmd_a} and changes

in $F_{x fbdmd\_2}$ will be a proportional relationship and that

15 the front wheel gain GA_2 in the proportional relationship

changes on the basis of β_{f_act} serving as the front wheel

gain adjustment parameter. Similarly, as is obvious from

the expression 24d and the expression 27d, the rear wheel

gain GA_4 related to the rear wheel W_4 is proportional to

20 K_4 , because $GA_4 = (2/dr) \cdot K_{4\_str} \cdot K_4$. And, this K_4 is

determined such that it changes on the basis of the actual

rear wheel side slip angle β_{r_act} serving as the rear

wheel gain adjustment parameter, as described above, so

that the rear wheel gain GA_4 will also change on the basis

25 of β_{r_act} . Hence, $F_{x fbdmd\_4}$ is determined such that the

relationship between changes in M_{fbdmd_a} and changes in

$F_{x fbdmd\_4}$ will be a proportional relationship and that the

rear wheel gain GA4 in the proportional relationship changes on the basis of $\beta_r\text{_{act}}$ serving as the rear wheel gain adjustment parameter.

[0280] In either case, the n-th wheel distribution gain
5 $K_n(n=1, 2, 3, 4)$ is determined such that it virtually continuously changes according to $\beta_f\text{_{act}}$ or $\beta_r\text{_{act}}$, thus preventing a situation wherein $Fx\text{fbdmd}_n$ discontinuously changes.

[0281] In a situation wherein $\beta_f\text{_{act}}$ and $\beta_r\text{_{act}}$ take
10 substantially the same value, as in the case where the actual vehicle 1 is in a normal traveling mode when $M\text{fbdmd}_a > 0$, the ratio of the first wheel distribution gain K_1 and the third wheel distribution gain K_3 associated with the front wheel W1 and the rear wheel W3 on the left
15 side and also a front-to-rear wheel ratio, which is a ratio of the front wheel gain GA1 to the rear wheel gain GA3, monotonously change in response to changes in the values of $\beta_f\text{_{act}}$ and $\beta_r\text{_{act}}$. Similarly, in a situation wherein $\beta_f\text{_{act}}$ and $\beta_r\text{_{act}}$ take substantially the same
20 value, as in the case where the actual vehicle 1 is in the normal traveling mode when $M\text{fbdmd}_a < 0$, the ratio of the second wheel distribution gain K_2 and the fourth wheel distribution gain K_4 associated with the front wheel W2 and the rear wheel W4 on the right side and also a front-
25 to-rear wheel ratio, which is a ratio of the front wheel gain GA2 to the rear wheel gain GA4, monotonously change in response to changes in the values of $\beta_f\text{_{act}}$ and $\beta_r\text{_{act}}$.

[0282] The following will explain the reason for determining the n-th wheel distribution gain K_n ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) on the basis of β_{f_act} and β_{r_act} in the tendency described above.

5 [0283] First, if $M_{fbdmd\_a} > 0$, then the FB target n-th wheel brake driving/braking force F_{xfbdmd_n} is determined such that the driving/braking forces of the first wheel W1 and the third wheel W3, which are the left wheels of the actual vehicle 1, are increased in the braking direction,
10 as described above.

[0284] In this case, a situation wherein $\beta_{f\_act} < 0$ and $\beta_{r\_act} < 0$ is assumed. In such a situation, if it is assumed that K_1 is set to a slightly larger value (to cause F_{xfbdmd_1} to increase in the braking direction) and
15 K_3 is set to a slightly smaller value (to restrain F_{xfbdmd_3} from increasing in the braking direction), then the lateral force of the first wheel W1 (this functions to generate a moment in the same direction as M_{fbdmd_a} about the center-of-gravity point of the actual vehicle 1)
20 decreases, whereas the lateral force of the third wheel W3 (this functions to generate a moment in the opposite direction from M_{fbdmd_a} about the center-of-gravity point of the actual vehicle 1) slightly increases. For this reason, there is a danger that it becomes difficult to
25 adequately generate a moment in the positive direction (a moment about the yaw axis) required by M_{fbdmd_a} about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1. Hence,

it has been decided to determine the first wheel distribution gain $K1$ to be a slightly smaller value and to determine the third wheel distribution gain $K3$ to be a slightly larger value in the situation wherein $\beta_{f\_act} < 0$ and $\beta_{r\_act} < 0$.

[0285] Another situation wherein $\beta_{f\_act} > 0$ and $\beta_{r\_act} > 0$ when $M_{fbdmd\_a} > 0$ will be assumed. In such a situation, if $K1$ is set to a slightly smaller value (consequently to restrain $F_{x fbdmd\_1}$ from increasing in the braking direction) and $K3$ is set to a slightly larger value (consequently to cause $F_{x fbdmd\_3}$ to increase in the braking direction), then the lateral force of the first wheel $W1$ (this functions to generate a moment in the opposite direction from M_{fbdmd_a} about the center-of-gravity point of the actual vehicle 1) slightly increases, whereas the lateral force of the third wheel $W3$ (this functions to generate a moment in the same direction as M_{fbdmd_a} about the center-of-gravity point of the actual vehicle 1) decreases. For this reason, there is a danger that it becomes difficult to adequately generate a moment in the positive direction (a moment about the yaw axis) required by M_{fbdmd_a} about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1. Hence, it has been decided to determine the first wheel distribution gain $K1$ to be a slightly larger value and to determine the third wheel distribution gain $K3$ to be a slightly smaller value in the situation wherein $\beta_{f\_act} > 0$ and $\beta_{r\_act} > 0$.

- 141 -

[0286] If $M_{fbdmd\_a} < 0$, then the FB target n-th wheel brake driving/braking force $F_{x_{fbdmd\_n}}$ is determined such that the driving/braking forces of the second wheel W2 and the fourth wheel W4, which are the right wheels of the actual vehicle 1, are increased in the braking direction, as described above.

[0287] In this case, a situation wherein $\beta_{f\_act} < 0$ and $\beta_{r\_act} < 0$ is assumed. In such a situation, if K2 is set to a slightly smaller value (to consequently restrain $F_{x_{fbdmd\_2}}$ from increasing in the braking direction) and K4 is set to a slightly larger value (to consequently cause $F_{x_{fbdmd\_4}}$ to increase in the braking direction), then the lateral force of the second wheel W2 (this functions to generate a moment in the opposite direction from M_{fbdmd_a} about the center-of-gravity point of the actual vehicle 1) increases, whereas the lateral force of the fourth wheel W4 (this functions to generate a moment in the same direction as M_{fbdmd_a} about the center-of-gravity point of the actual vehicle 1) decreases. For this reason, there is a danger that it becomes difficult to adequately generate a moment in the negative direction (a moment about the yaw axis) required by M_{fbdmd_a} about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1. Hence, it has been decided to determine the second wheel distribution gain K2 to be a slightly larger value and to determine the fourth wheel distribution gain K4 to be a slightly smaller value in the situation wherein $\beta_{f\_act} < 0$ and $\beta_{r\_act} < 0$.

[0288] Another situation wherein $\beta_{f\_act} > 0$ and $\beta_{r\_act} > 0$ when $M_{fbdmd\_a} < 0$ will be assumed. In such a situation, if K_2 is set to a slightly larger value (consequently to cause $F_{x fbdmd\_2}$ to increase in the braking direction) and K_4 is set to a slightly smaller value (consequently to restrain $F_{x fbdmd\_4}$ from increasing in the braking direction), then the lateral force of the second wheel W_2 (this functions to generate a moment in the same direction as M_{fbdmd_a} about the center-of-gravity point of the actual vehicle 1) decreases, whereas the lateral force of the fourth wheel W_4 (this functions to generate a moment in the opposite direction from M_{fbdmd_a} about the center-of-gravity point of the actual vehicle 1) increases. For this reason, there is a danger that it becomes difficult to adequately generate a moment in the negative direction (a moment about the yaw axis) required by M_{fbdmd_a} about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1. Hence, it has been decided to determine the second wheel distribution gain K_2 to be a slightly smaller value and to determine the fourth wheel distribution gain K_4 to be a slightly larger value in the situation wherein $\beta_{f\_act} > 0$ and $\beta_{r\_act} > 0$.

[0289] Thus, determining the n -th wheel distribution gain K_n ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) as described above makes it possible to prevent a lateral force that becomes an obstacle in generating a moment of M_{fbdmd_a} in the yaw direction about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 from

becoming excessive while at the same time preventing a lateral force that is effective in generating a moment of M_{fbdmd_a} in the yaw direction about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 from becoming too small.

5 [0290] Moreover, by determining the n-th wheel distribution gain K_n ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) as described above, the sum of a value of K_1 and a value of K_3 and the sum of a value of K_2 and a value of K_4 , respectively, become substantially one in a situation wherein β_{f_act} and β_{r_act} agree or
10 substantially agree with each other, as in the case where the actual vehicle 1 is in a normal circular turn mode or a normal straight travel mode. This means that if the braking device of the driving/braking device 3A is operated faithfully in accordance with the FB target n-th
15 wheel brake driving/braking force F_{xfbdmd_n} , then the gain of a transfer function from M_{fbdmd_a} to a moment (a moment in the yaw direction) actually generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 becomes substantially one (a moment in the yaw direction actually
20 generated becomes substantially equal to M_{fbdmd_a}).

[0291] Supplementally, there is a case where the difference between β_{f_act} and β_{r_act} increases in a transient motion situation or the like of the actual vehicle 1. And, in this case, the sum of a value of K_1
25 and a value of K_3 and the sum of a value of K_2 and a value of K_4 , respectively, considerably deviate from one. To solve this problem, preferably, after the values of K_1 and

- 144 -

K3 are determined as described above, the values of K1 and K3 are corrected while maintaining the ratio of the values at a constant level such that the sum of the corrected values of K1 and K3 becomes substantially one or becomes closer to one than the sum of the values of K1 and K3 before the correction. Similarly, it is preferred that, after the values of K2 and K4 are determined as described above, the values of K2 and K4 are corrected while maintaining the ratio of the values at a constant level such that the sum of the corrected values of K2 and K4 becomes substantially one or becomes closer to one than the sum of the values of K2 and K4 before the correction. To be more specific, for example, after the n-th distribution gain K_n ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) is determined according to the graphs of Figs. 14(a) and (b), K_1' , K_2' , K_3' and K_4' are determined by $K_1' = K_1 / (K_1 + K_3)$, $K_3' = K_3 / (K_1 + K_3)$, $K_2' = K_2 / (K_2 + K_4)$, and $K_4' = K_4 / (K_2 + K_4)$. Then, K_1' , K_2' , K_3' and K_4' may be respectively re-determined as the values of K1, K2, K3 and K4.

[0292] In this example, the sum of K1 and K3 and the sum of K2 and K4 are always maintained at one; however, the sums do not have to always agree with one. Alternatively, the values of K1 to K4 may be corrected such that the sums take values within a range in the vicinity of one.

Alternatively, K1 to K4 may be corrected such that the sum of K1 and k3 and the sum of K2 and K4 approach further to one.

- 145 -

[0293] Further, in addition to determining the FB target n-th wheel brake driving/braking force $F_{x\text{fbdmd}_n}$ as described above, the actuator operation FB target value distribution processor 222 according to the present reference example 1 inputs the feedback yaw moment required value M_{fbdmd} to a processor 222e so as to determine, by the processor 222e, an active steering FB target lateral force $F_{y\text{fbdmd}_f}$, which is a feedback target value of the lateral force of the front wheels W1 and W2 by an operation of the steering device 3B. Here, the graph of the processor 222e in the figure is a graph showing a relationship between M_{fbdmd} and $F_{y\text{fbdmd}_f}$, the values in the direction of the axis of abscissas related to the graph indicating the values of M_{fbdmd} , while the values in the direction of the axis of ordinates indicating the values of $F_{y\text{fbdmd}_f}$. As shown in the graph, the processor 222e basically determines $F_{y\text{fbdmd}_f}$ such that $F_{y\text{fbdmd}_f}$ monotonously increases as M_{fbdmd} increases. In this case, $F_{y\text{fbdmd}_f}$ is determined by using, for example, a map, from a value of M_{fbdmd} supplied to the processor 222e.

[0294] Alternatively, $F_{y\text{fbdmd}_f}$ may be determined by multiplying M_{fbdmd} by a predetermined gain. Further, $F_{y\text{fbdmd}_f}$ may be determined on the basis of M_{fbdmd} within a range between a predetermined upper limit value (>0) and a predetermined lower limit value (<0).

[0295] Supplementally, the processing by the processor

- 146 -

222e may be omitted regardless of whether the steering device 3B is an active steering device or a mechanical steering device. When determining the active steering FB target lateral force F_{yfbdmf} by the processing performed by the processor 222e and manipulating the operation of the steering device 3B on the basis of the determined F_{yfbdmf} , it is further preferable to determine F_{xfbdmn} ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) and F_{yfbdmf} such that the sum of a moment in the yaw direction to be generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 by the FB target n-th wheel brake driving/braking force F_{xfbdmn} ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) and a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 by the active steering FB target lateral force F_{yfbdmf} is substantially equal to the aforesaid feedback yaw moment basic required value M_{fbdm} . For example, the active steering FB target lateral force F_{yfbdmf} may be determined on the basis of a difference between M_{fbdm} and M_{fbdma} . In this case, it is desirable to determine F_{yfbdmf} such that a moment in the yaw direction that is substantially equal to M_{fbdm} is generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 by F_{yfbdmf} when $M_{fbdma}=0$.

[0296] The above has explained the details of the processing by the actuator operation FB target value determiner 20b in the present reference example 1. This processing determines the FB target n-th wheel brake

- 147 -

driving/braking force $F_{x\text{fb}dmd\_n}(n=1, 2, 3, 4)$ or
 $F_{x\text{fb}dmd\_n}(n=1, 2, 3, 4)$ and the active steering FB target
lateral force $F_{y\text{fb}dmd\_f}$ as the actuator operation FB
target value such that $M_{\text{fb}dmd}$ is approximated to zero
5 (consequently to approximate the state amount errors γ_{err}
and β_{err} to zero), as described above.

[0297] Supplementally, the FB target n-th wheel brake
driving/braking force $F_{x\text{fb}dmd\_n}(n=1, 2, 3, 4)$ in the
actuator operation FB target value determined by the
10 actuator operation FB target value determiner 20b as
described above corresponds to a feedback control input in
the present invention.

[0298] The limiter 222d_n($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) may output, as
 $F_{x\text{fb}dmd\_n}$, a value obtained by limiting $F_{x\text{fb}n}$ input
15 thereto to not more than a predetermined positive upper
limit value, which is slightly larger than zero. For
example, if $F_{x\text{fb}n}$ is a value that is the upper limit
value or less, then $F_{x\text{fb}n}$ is directly output as $F_{x\text{fb}dmd\_n}$
without processing it, or if $F_{x\text{fb}n}$ takes a positive value
20 that is larger than the upper limit value, then the upper
limit value is output as $F_{x\text{fb}dmd\_n}$. In this case,
 $F_{x\text{fb}dmd\_n}$ of a positive value provides a feedback control
input that functions to decrease the magnitude of the
driving/braking force of the n-th wheel W_n in the braking
25 direction by the braking device.

[0299] Further, for each wheel $W_n(n=1, 2, 3, 4)$, the
processing from the processor 222a_n to the limiter 222d_n

(the processing for determining Fx_{fbdmd_n} on the basis of M_{fbdmd_a} and δf_{act} or δr_{act} and βf_{act} or βr_{act}), or the processing from the processor 222b_n to the limiter 222d_n (the processing for determining Fx_{fbdmd_n} on the basis of $Fx_{fullfbdmd\_n}$ and δf_{act} or δr_{act} and βf_{act} or βr_{act}), or the processing from the processor 222c_n to the limiter 222d_n (the processing for determining Fx_{fbdmd_n} on the basis of an output of the processor 222b_n and βf_{act} or βr_{act}), or the processing that combines two or more portions of the processing from the processor 222a_n to the limiter 222d_n (e.g., the processing from the processor 222b_n to the processor 222c_n) may be changed to determine an output by using a map or a function expression from input values necessary for such processing.

[0300] For instance, to carry out the processing from the processor 222c_n to the limiter 222d_n by using a map, a map for the first wheel may be set as shown in, for example, Figs. 15(a) to (e), and a map for the third wheel may be set as shown in, for example, Figs. 16(a) to (e). In this case, the graphs in Figs. 15(a) to (e), respectively, show the relationships between outputs of the processor 222b_1 ($=Fx_{fullfbdmd\_1} \cdot K1\_str$) and Fx_{fbdmd_1} in association with a plurality of representative types of values of βf_{act} , the individual values being shown in terms of the values in the direction of the axis of abscissas of the graphs and the values in the direction of

the axis of ordinates. Further, the graphs in Figs. 16(a) to (e), respectively, show the relationships between outputs of the processor 222b_3 (=Fxfullfbdm_3·K3_str) and Fxfbdmd_3 in association with a plurality of

5 representative types of values of β_{r_act} , the individual values being shown in terms of the values in the direction of the axis of abscissas of the graphs and the values in the direction of the axis of ordinates. In Fig. 15,

regarding the values of β_{f_act} , " β_{f--} " means a negative value having a relatively large absolute value, " β_{f-} " means a negative value having a relatively small absolute value, " β_{f+} " means a positive value having a relatively small absolute value, and " β_{f++} " means a positive value having a relatively large absolute value. Similarly, in

15 Fig. 16, regarding the values of β_{r_act} , " β_{r--} " means a negative value having a relatively large absolute value, " β_{r-} " means a negative value having a relatively small absolute value, " β_{r+} " means a positive value having a relatively small absolute value, and " β_{r++} " means a positive value having a relatively large absolute value.

20 [0301] Although not shown, a map for the second wheel may be set such that the relationship between outputs of the processor 222b_2 (=Fxfullfbdm_2·K2_str) and Fxfbdmd_2 will be the same at each value of β_{f_act} as that in the map for the first wheel associated with the values obtained by reversing the signs of the values (e.g., the relationship between an output of the processor 222b_2

- 150 -

when $\beta f_{\text{act}} = \beta f - (=Fxf_{\text{fullfbdmd\_2}} \cdot K2_{\text{str}})$ and $Fxf_{\text{bdmd\_2}}$ will be the same as the relationship between an output of the processor 222b_1 when $\beta f_{\text{act}} = \beta f +$ and $Fxf_{\text{bdmd\_1}}$ (the relationship shown by the graph of Fig. 15(c))).

5 Similarly, although not shown, a map for the fourth wheel may be set such that the relationship between outputs of the processor 222b_4 ($=Fxf_{\text{fullfbdmd\_4}} \cdot K4_{\text{str}}$) and $Fxf_{\text{bdmd\_4}}$ will be the same at each value of βr_{act} as that in the map for the third wheel associated with the values
10 obtained by reversing the signs of the values (e.g., the relationship between an output of the processor 222b_4 when $\beta r_{\text{act}} = \beta r - (=Fxf_{\text{fullfbdmd\_4}} \cdot K4_{\text{str}})$ and $Fxf_{\text{bdmd\_4}}$ will be the same as the relationship between an output of the processor 222b_3 when $\beta r_{\text{act}} = \beta r +$ and $Fxf_{\text{bdmd\_3}}$ (the
15 relationship shown by the graph of Fig. 16(c))).

[0302] In this example, if an output of the processor 222b_n(n=1, 2, 3, 4) is a value of zero or less, then $Fxf_{\text{bdmd\_n}}$ is determined in the same manner as that shown in Fig. 12 described above. Meanwhile, if an output of
20 the processor 222b_n(n=1, 2, 3, 4) is a positive value, then $Fxf_{\text{bdmd\_n}}$ takes a positive value within a range of relatively small values as with the case where the upper limit value in the limiter 222d_n is set to a positive value as described above.

25 [0303] Supplementally, both the processors 222b_3 and 222b_4 associated with the third wheel W3 and the fourth wheel W4 share the same input values and output values;

- 151 -

therefore, carrying out the processing from the processor 222c_3 to the limiter 222d_3 and the processing from the processor 222c_4 to the limiter 222d_4 on the third wheel W3 and the fourth wheel W4 by using the maps as described above is equivalent to carrying out the processing from the processor 222b_3 to the limiter 222d_3 and the processing from the processor 222b_4 to the limiter 222d_4 by using the maps.

[0304] Further, as the front wheel gain adjustment parameter for determining (whereby to manipulate the front wheel gains GA1 and GA2) the n-th wheel distribution gain K_n ($n=1, 2$) related to the front wheels W1 and W2, the following may be used besides β_{f_act} .

[0305] For example, in place of β_{f_act} , the detected values or the estimated values of the side slip velocities of the front wheels W1 and W2 of the actual vehicle 1 (components in the direction of the rotational axes of the front wheels W1 and W2 in the advancing velocity vectors of the front wheels W1 and W2) or the detected values or the estimated values of the lateral accelerations of the front wheels W1 and W2 (lateral components of the acceleration vectors of the front wheels W1 and W2) may be used as the front wheel gain adjustment parameters.

Incidentally, the side slip velocities or the lateral accelerations of the front wheels W1 and W2 are examples of the state amounts related to lateral motions of the front wheels W1 and W2, as with β_{f_act} . These side slip

- 152 -

velocities and the lateral accelerations may be the detected values or the estimated values of each of the front wheels W1 and W2; alternatively, however, the means values thereof or the detected values or the estimated values of either one of the front wheels W1 and W2 may be used.

[0306] Alternatively, a detected value or an estimated value of an actual side slip angle at a predetermined position of a front portion of the actual vehicle 1 (e.g., a central position on the axle of the front wheels W1 and W2), or a detected value or an estimated value of the side slip velocity at the predetermined position (a lateral component of the advancing velocity vector at the predetermined position), or a detected value or an estimated value of the lateral acceleration at the predetermined position (a lateral component of the acceleration vector at the predetermined position) may be used as the front wheel gain adjustment parameter. The side slip angle, the side slip velocity, and the lateral acceleration at the predetermined position are examples of the state amounts related to a lateral motion at the predetermined position.

[0307] Alternatively, the detected values or the estimated values of the lateral forces of the front wheels W1 and W2 may be used as the front wheel gain adjustment parameters. The lateral forces may take a detected value or an estimated value for each of the front wheels W1 and

- 153 -

W2 or may take a mean value thereof or a detected value or an estimated value on either one of the front wheels W1 and W2.

[0308] Regardless of which of the aforesaid front wheel gain adjustment parameters may be used, the relationship between a front wheel gain adjustment parameter and the n-th wheel distribution gain K_n ($n=1, 2$) may be set in the same manner as that for the relationship between β_{f_act} and K_1, K_2 .

[0309] Alternatively, a parameter having correlativity with one of the state amounts (such as β_{f_act}) related to the lateral motions of the front wheels W1 and W2 of the actual vehicle 1 as described above, a state amount related to a lateral motion at a predetermined position of a front portion of the actual vehicle 1, and the lateral forces of the front wheels W1 and W2 may be used as a front wheel gain adjustment parameter. For instance, any parameter that is substantially proportional to a state amount related to the lateral motion or a detected value or an estimated value of a lateral force may be used as a front wheel gain adjustment parameter. Further, a state amount related to the lateral motion or one or more parameters that define the value of a lateral force may be used as the front wheel gain adjustment parameters. For example, β_{f_act} is basically defined on the basis of the actual vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_{act} , the actual yaw rate γ_{act} , the actual traveling

- 154 -

velocity V_{act} , and the actual front wheel steering angle δf_{act} (refer to the expression 02a), and βf_{act} can be expressed as a function of β_{act} , γ_{act} , V_{act} , and δf_{act} . Accordingly, these β_{act} , γ_{act} , V_{act} , and δf_{act} may be used as the front wheel gain adjustment parameters in order to determine the n-th wheel distribution gain K_n ($n=1, 2$) associated with the front wheels W1 and W2 according to a map or a function expression on the basis of the aforesaid front wheel gain adjustment parameters. More specifically, for example, the aforesaid relationship between βf_{act} and the first wheel distribution gain $K1$ and the second wheel distribution gain $K2$ (the relationship shown by the graph in Fig. 14(a) described above) is converted beforehand into a relationship between β_{act} , γ_{act} , V_{act} and δf_{act} and $K1$ and $K2$ on the basis of an expression which has replaced βf_d , β_d , γ_d , V_d and δf_d of the expression 02a related to the model vehicle by βf_{act} , β_{act} , γ_{act} , V_{act} and δf_{act} , respectively. Then, based on the relationship obtained by the conversion, $K1$ and $K2$ may be determined according to β_{act} , γ_{act} , V_{act} and δf_{act} .

[0310] Similarly to the above, the following may be used besides βr_{act} as a rear wheel gain adjustment parameter for determining (so as to manipulate the rear wheel gains GA3 and GA4) the n-th wheel distribution gain K_n ($n=3, 4$) associated with the rear wheels W3 and W4.

[0311] For example, in place of βr_{act} , the detected

- 155 -

values or the estimated values of the side slip velocities of the rear wheels W3 and W4 of the actual vehicle 1 (components in the direction of the rotational axes of the rear wheels W3 and W4 in the advancing velocity vectors of the rear wheels W3 and W4) or the detected values or the estimated values of the lateral accelerations of the rear wheels W3 and W4 (lateral components of the acceleration vectors of the rear wheels W3 and W4) may be used as the rear wheel gain adjustment parameters. Incidentally, the side slip velocities or the lateral accelerations of the rear wheels W3 and W4 are examples of the state amounts related to lateral motions of the rear wheels W3 and W4, as with β_{r_act} . These side slip velocities and the lateral accelerations may be a detected value or an estimated value of each of the rear wheels W3 and W4; alternatively, however, a means value thereof or a detected value or an estimated value of either one of the rear wheels W3 and W4 may be used.

[0312] Alternatively, a detected value or an estimated value of a side slip angle at a predetermined position of a rear portion of the actual vehicle 1 (e.g., a central position on the axle of the rear wheels W3 and W4), or a detected value or an estimated value of a side slip velocity at the predetermined position (a lateral component of the advancing velocity vector at the predetermined position), or a detected value or an estimated value of a lateral acceleration at the

- 156 -

predetermined position (a lateral component of the acceleration vector at the predetermined position) may be used as the rear wheel gain adjustment parameter. The side slip angle, the side slip velocity, and the lateral acceleration at the predetermined position are examples of the state amounts related to a lateral motion at the predetermined position.

[0313] Alternatively, the detected values or the estimated values of the lateral forces of the rear wheels W3 and W4 of the actual vehicle 1 may be used as the rear wheel gain adjustment parameters. The lateral forces may take a detected value or an estimated value for each of the rear wheels W3 and W4 or may take a mean value thereof or a detected value or an estimated value on either one of the rear wheels W3 and W4.

[0314] Regardless of which of the aforesaid rear wheel gain adjustment parameters may be used, the relationship between the rear wheel gain adjustment parameter and the n-th wheel distribution gain K_n ($n=3, 4$) may be set in the same manner as that for the relationship between β_{r_act} and K_3, K_4 .

[0315] Alternatively, a parameter having correlativity with one of the state amounts (such as β_{r_act}) related to the lateral motions of the rear wheels W3 and W4 of the actual vehicle 1 as described above, a state amount related to a lateral motion at a predetermined position of a rear portion of the actual vehicle 1, and the lateral

forces of the rear wheels W3 and W4 may be used as a rear wheel gain adjustment parameter. For instance, any parameter that is substantially proportional to a state amount related to the lateral motion or a detected value or an estimated value of a lateral force may be used as a rear wheel gain adjustment parameter. Further, a state amount related to the lateral motion or one or more parameters that define the value of a lateral force may be used as the rear wheel gain adjustment parameters. For example, β_{r_act} is basically defined on the basis of the actual vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_{act} , the actual yaw rate γ_{act} , and the actual traveling velocity V_{act} (refer to the aforesaid expression 02b), and β_{r_act} can be expressed as a function of β_{act} , γ_{act} , and V_{act} . Accordingly, these β_{act} , γ_{act} , V_{act} may be used as the rear wheel gain adjustment parameters in order to determine the n-th wheel distribution gain K_n ($n=3, 4$) associated with the rear wheels W3 and W4 according to a map or a function expression on the basis of the rear wheel gain adjustment parameters. More specifically, for example, the aforesaid relationship between β_{r_act} and the third wheel distribution gain K_3 and the fourth wheel distribution gain K_4 (the relationship shown by the graph in Fig. 14(b) described above) is converted beforehand into a relationship between β_{act} , γ_{act} , and V_{act} and K_3 and K_4 on the basis of an expression which has replaced β_{r_d} , β_d , γ_d , and V_d of the expression 02b related to the

- 158 -

model vehicle by β_{r_act} , β_{act} , γ_{act} , and V_{act} , respectively. Then, based on the relationship obtained by the conversion, K3 and K4 may be determined according to β_{act} , γ_{act} , and V_{act} .

5 [0316] Further, instead of using the state amounts related to the lateral motions of the front wheels W1 and W2 of the actual vehicle 1, the state amount related to the lateral motion at the predetermined position of the front portion of the actual vehicle 1, the lateral forces
10 of the front wheels W1 and W2 of the actual vehicle 1, and a parameter having correlativity with any one of these state amounts and the lateral forces as the front wheel gain adjustment parameters, as described above, the state amounts or lateral forces or parameters in the model
15 vehicle on the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 corresponding thereto may be used as the front wheel gain adjustment parameters. For instance, β_{f_d} of the model vehicle in place of β_{f_act} may be used as the front wheel gain adjustment parameter to determine the first wheel
20 distribution gain K1 and the second wheel distribution gain K2. Similarly, instead of using the state amounts related to the lateral motions of the rear wheels W3 and W4 of the actual vehicle 1, the state amount related to the lateral motion at the predetermined position of the
25 rear portion of the actual vehicle 1, the lateral forces of the rear wheels W3 and W4 of the actual vehicle 1, and a parameter having correlativity with any one of these

state amounts and the lateral forces as the rear wheel gain adjustment parameters, the state amounts or lateral forces or parameters in the model vehicle on the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 corresponding thereto may be used as the rear wheel gain adjustment parameters. For instance, β_{r_d} of the model vehicle in place of β_{r_act} may be used as the rear wheel gain adjustment parameter to determine the third wheel distribution gain K3 and the fourth wheel distribution gain K4.

[0317] Alternatively, a composite value of a state amount related to a lateral motion of the front wheels W1 and W2 or at a predetermined position of a front portion of the actual vehicle 1 and a state amount related to a lateral motion of the front wheel Wf or at a predetermined position of the front portion of the model vehicle (the same type of state amount as that of the state amount of the actual vehicle 1), or a composite value of a lateral force of the front wheels W1 and W2 of the actual vehicle 1 and a lateral force of the front wheel Wf of the model vehicle may be used as the front wheel gain adjustment parameter. Similarly, a composite value of a state amount related to a lateral motion of the rear wheels W3 and W4 or at a predetermined position of a rear portion of the actual vehicle 1, and a state amount related to a lateral motion of the rear wheel Wr or at a predetermined position of the rear portion of the model vehicle (the same type of state amount as that of the state amount of the actual

vehicle 1), or a composite value of a lateral force of the rear wheels W3 and W4 of the actual vehicle 1 and a lateral force of the rear wheel W_r of the model vehicle may be used as the rear wheel gain adjustment parameter.

5 For example, the first wheel distribution gain K₁ and the second wheel distribution gain K₂ may be determined on the basis of a weighted mean value of βf_{act} of the actual vehicle 1 and βf_d of the model vehicle, and the third wheel distribution gain K₃ and the fourth wheel
10 distribution gain K₄ may be determined on the basis of a weighted mean value of βr_{act} of the actual vehicle 1 and βr_d of the model vehicle. In this case, the weights involved in the weighted mean values may be provided with a frequency characteristic (e.g., a frequency
15 characteristic functioning as a phase compensating element).

[0318] Alternatively, the first temporary values of the respective n-th wheel distribution gains K_n(n=1, 2) related to the front wheels W₁ and W₂ may be determined on
20 the basis of a state amount related to a lateral motion of the front wheels W₁ and W₂ or at a predetermined position of the front portion of the actual vehicle 1 or a lateral force of the front wheels W₁ and W₂ of the actual vehicle 1, and the second temporary values of the respective n-th
25 wheel distribution gains K_n(n=1, 2) related to the front wheels W₁ and W₂ may be determined on the basis of a state amount related to a lateral motion of the front wheel W_f

or at a predetermined position of the front portion of the model vehicle or a lateral force of the front wheel W_f of the model vehicle, and a composite value of the weighed mean value or the weighted mean values or the like of the first temporary values and the second temporary values may be determined as the n -th wheel distribution gain K_n ($n=1, 2$). For example, the first temporary value of K_1 related to the first wheel W_1 is determined on the basis of βf_{act} as indicated by the graph shown in Fig. 14(a) described above and the second temporary value of K_1 is determined on the basis of βf_d in the same manner as that for the first temporary value. In this case, the tendency of changes in the second temporary value relative to βf_d may be the same as the tendency of changes in the first temporary value relative to βf_{act} . Then, a weighed mean value of these first temporary value and second temporary value is determined as the first wheel distribution gain K_1 . The same applies to the second wheel distribution gain K_2 .

[0319] Similarly, the first temporary values of the respective n -th wheel distribution gains K_n ($n=3, 4$) related to the rear wheels W_3 and W_4 may be determined on the basis of a state amount related to a lateral motion of the rear wheels W_3 and W_4 or at a predetermined position of the rear portion of the actual vehicle 1 or a lateral force of the rear wheels W_3 and W_4 of the actual vehicle 1, and the second temporary values of the n -th wheel

- 162 -

distribution gains $K_n(n=3, 4)$ related to the rear wheels W_3 and W_4 may be determined on the basis of a state amount related to a lateral motion of the rear wheel W_r or at a predetermined position of the rear portion of the model vehicle or a lateral force of the rear wheel W_r of the model vehicle, and a composite value of the weighed mean values or the weighted mean values or the like of the first temporary values and the second temporary values may be determined as the n -th wheel distribution gain $K_n(n=3, 4)$. For example, the first temporary value of K_3 related to the third wheel W_3 is determined on the basis of β_{r_act} as indicated by the graph shown in Fig. 14(b) described above and the second temporary value of K_3 is determined on the basis of β_{r_d} in the same manner as that for the first temporary value. In this case, the tendency of changes in the second temporary value relative to β_{r_d} may be the same as the tendency of changes in the first temporary value relative to β_{r_act} . Then, a weighed mean value of these first temporary value and second temporary value is determined as the third wheel distribution gain K_3 . The same applies to the fourth wheel distribution gain K_4 .

[0320] Further desirably, the value of the n -th wheel distribution gain $K_n(n=1, 2, 3, 4)$ is determined such that the value is not only changed according to a front wheel gain adjustment parameter or a rear wheel gain adjustment parameter, such as β_{f_act} or β_{r_act} , but also changed

- 163 -

according to the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} .

For example, when determining the n-th wheel distribution

gain K_n on the basis of β_{f_act} or β_{r_act} , as described

above in relation to the present reference example 1, K_1

5 is desirably determined such that the first wheel

distribution gain K_1 when β_{f_act} is a negative value

having a large absolute value is further decreased as

μ_{estm} is decreased. Further, K_3 is desirably determined

such that the third wheel distribution gain K_3 when β_{r_act}

10 is a positive value having a large absolute value is

further decreased as μ_{estm} is decreased. Similarly, K_2 is

desirably determined such that the second wheel

distribution gain K_2 when β_{f_act} is a positive value

having a large absolute value is further decreased as

15 μ_{estm} is decreased. Further, K_4 is desirably determined

such that the fourth wheel distribution gain K_4 when

β_{r_act} is a negative value having a large absolute value

is further decreased as μ_{estm} is decreased. This is

because, as μ_{estm} decreases, the lateral force of the n-th

20 wheel W_n considerably reduces when the driving/braking

force of the n-th wheel W_n ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) in the braking

direction is increased.

[0321] Further, a value (a value set on the basis of a

front wheel gain adjustment parameter or a rear wheel gain

25 adjustment parameter, such as β_{f_act} or β_{r_act}) of the n-

th wheel distribution gain K_n ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) may be

adjusted also on the basis of an actual ground contact

- 164 -

load of the n-th wheel (a detected value or an estimated value of a translational force, which is in the vertical direction or a direction perpendicular to a road surface, of a road surface reaction force acting on the n-th wheel).

5 In this case, the value of the n-th wheel distribution gain K_n is desirably determined such that it decreases as the actual ground contact load of the n-th wheel W_n decreases.

[0322] Alternatively, when the actual ground contact load
 10 of each n-th wheel W_n is expressed by F_{zact_n} ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) and the total sum thereof is expressed by ΣF_{zact} ($= F_{zact\_1} + F_{zact\_2} + F_{zact\_3} + F_{zact\_4}$), the values of the n-th wheel distribution gains K_1 and K_2 related to the front wheels W_1 and W_2 may be adjusted on the basis of the sum
 15 of the actual ground contact loads of the front wheels W_1 and W_2 ($= F_{zact\_1} + F_{zact\_2}$) or may be adjusted on the basis of a ratio of the sum with respect to ΣF_{zact} ($= (F_{zact\_1} + F_{zact\_2}) / \Sigma F_{zact}$). Similarly, the n-th wheel distribution gains K_3 and K_4 related to the rear wheels W_3
 20 and W_4 may be adjusted on the basis of the sum of the actual ground contact loads of the rear wheels W_3 and W_4 ($= F_{zact\_3} + F_{zact\_4}$) or may be adjusted on the basis of a ratio of the sum with respect to ΣF_{zact} ($= (F_{zact\_3} + F_{zact\_4}) / \Sigma F_{zact}$). Alternatively, the value of
 25 each n-th wheel distribution gain K_n ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) may be adjusted on the basis of the ratio of the actual ground contact load of each n-th wheel W_n with respect to ΣF_{zact}

- 165 -

($=F_{zact\_n}/\Sigma F_{zact}$).

[0323] Further, in the present reference example 1, as the feedback control input to the braking device of the driving/braking device 3A (as the actuator operation FB target value), the FB target n-th wheel brake driving/braking force F_{xfbdmd_n} ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) has been determined; alternatively, however, instead of F_{xfbdmd_n} , a target slip ratio of each wheel W_n ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) by the braking device may be determined or both the target slip ratio and F_{xfbdmd_n} may be determined.

[0324] Further, the actuator operation FB target value may be directly determined by using a map or the like from the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} , without determining M_{fbdmd} or M_{fbdmd_a} , which are intermediate variables, to determine an actuator operation FB target value, such as F_{xfbdmd_n} . The actuator operation FB target value may be determined by using, for example, a multidimensional map which uses variables, such as γ_{err} , β_{err} , β_{f_act} (or β_{f_d}), β_{r_act} (or β_{r_d}), V_{act} , and μ_{estm} , as inputs.

[0325] The feedback yaw moment basic required value M_{fbdmd} may be determined such that M_{fbdmd} not only causes the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} to approximate zero but also causes the deviation amounts γ_{over} and β_{over} determined by the $\gamma\beta$ limiter 202 of the virtual external force determiner 20a to approximate zero (thereby to restrain the γ_{da} and β_{da} from deviating from their permissible ranges $[\gamma_{damin}, \gamma_{damax}]$ and $[\beta_{damin}, \beta_{damax}]$,

respectively). For example, $M_{fbdm\bar{d}}$ may be determined according to expression 28a given below by using appropriate coefficients $K_{fbdm\bar{d}1}$ to $K_{fbdm\bar{d}4}$.

[0326]

$$\begin{aligned} 5 \quad M_{fbdm\bar{d}} = & K_{fbdm\bar{d}1} \cdot \gamma_{err} + K_{fbdm\bar{d}2} \cdot \beta_{err} \\ & - K_{fbdm\bar{d}3} \cdot \gamma_{over} - K_{fbdm\bar{d}4} \cdot \beta_{over} \quad \text{..... Expression 28a} \end{aligned}$$

Determining $M_{fbdm\bar{d}}$ according to this expression 28a is equivalent to determining $M_{fbdm\bar{d}}$ by correcting the temporary value of $M_{fbdm\bar{d}}$ determined by the feedback control law for approximating the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} to zero (the sum of the first term and the second term of the right side of expression 28a) such that the deviation amounts γ_{over} and β_{over} are approximated to zero.

10 [0327] Alternatively, the aforesaid dead-zone excess feedback yaw moment required value $M_{fbdm\bar{d}}_a$, which is the value obtained by passing $M_{fbdm\bar{d}}$ determined to bring the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} close to zero according to the expression 23 through the dead zone processor 221,

15 may be corrected by expression 28b given below (an expression that uses $M_{fbdm\bar{d}}_a$ in place of the value of the sum of the first term and the second term of the right side of the above expression 28a) to determine a value $M_{fbdm\bar{d}}_a'$ and this $M_{fbdm\bar{d}}_a'$ may be again used as $M_{fbdm\bar{d}}_a$.

20

25 In other words, the value obtained by passing $M_{fbdm\bar{d}}$ through the dead zone processor 221 is defined as a temporary value of $M_{fbdm\bar{d}}_a$, and $M_{fbdm\bar{d}}_a$ may be

determined by correcting the temporary value such that the deviation amounts γ_{over} and β_{over} approximate zero.

[0328]

$$M_{\text{fbdmd\_a}}' = M_{\text{fbdmd\_a}} - K_{\text{fbdmd3}} \gamma_{\text{over}} - K_{\text{fbdmd4}} \beta_{\text{over}}$$

5

..... Expression 28b

Supplementally, according to the present reference example 1, the virtual external force temporary values M_{virtmp} and F_{virtmp} are manipulated to approximate γ_{over} and β_{over} to zero by the $\gamma\beta$ limiter 202, as described above, thereby determining the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} . This alone restrains γ_d and β_d of the model vehicle from deviating from their permissible ranges $[\gamma_{\text{damin}}, \gamma_{\text{damax}}]$ and $[\beta_{\text{damin}}, \beta_{\text{damax}}]$, respectively, when they change. Accordingly, the actuator operation FB target value changes such that γ_{act} and β_{act} of the actual vehicle 1 are brought close to γ_d and β_d , respectively. Therefore, even when the actuator operation FB target value is determined such that only γ_{err} and β_{err} are brought close to zero, the γ_{act} and β_{act} can be also consequently restrained from deviating from the permissible ranges $[\gamma_{\text{damin}}, \gamma_{\text{damax}}]$ and $[\beta_{\text{damin}}, \beta_{\text{damax}}]$. However, determining M_{fbdmd} or $M_{\text{fbdmd\_a}}$ (so as to determine the actuator operation FB target value) such that γ_{over} and β_{over} are also brought close to zero in addition to γ_{err} and β_{err} as described above makes it possible to further effectively restrain the γ_{act} and β_{act}

- 168 -

from deviating from the permissible ranges $[\gamma_{dmin}, \gamma_{dmax}]$ and $[\beta_{dmin}, \beta_{dmax}]$, respectively.

[0329] Further, if M_{fbdmd} or M_{fbdmd_a} is determined such that γ_{over} and β_{over} are also brought close to zero, in addition to γ_{err} and β_{err} , as described above, then it is not always necessary to determine the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} such that γ_{over} and β_{over} are brought close to zero; instead, the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} may be determined so as simply to bring γ_{err} and β_{err} close to zero. In this case, the virtual external force temporary values M_{virtmp} and F_{virtmp} determined by the virtual external force temporary value determiner 201 may be directly determined as the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} , respectively. And, the processing other than the processing for determining M_{fbdmd} or M_{fbdmd_a} and the processing for determining the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} may be the same as that in the present reference example 1. This also makes it possible to determine the actuator operation FB target value such that γ_{act} and β_{act} are restrained from deviating from the permissible ranges $[\gamma_{dmin}, \gamma_{dmax}]$ and $[\beta_{dmin}, \beta_{dmax}]$, respectively. Even in this case, the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} are determined such that the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} approximate zero, so that the γ_d and β_d are consequently determined such that the γ_d and β_d of the model vehicle are restrained from deviating from the permissible ranges $[\gamma_{dmin}, \gamma_{dmax}]$ and $[\beta_{dmin}, \beta_{dmax}]$,

respectively.

[0330]

[About the FF law]

The processing by the FF law 22 will now be
5 explained in detail with reference to Fig. 17. Fig. 17 is
a functional block diagram showing the processing by the
FF law 22.

[0331] As described above, according to the present

reference example 1, a feedforward target value determined

10 by the FF law 22 (a basic target value of the actuator
devices 3 on the basis of drive operation inputs) includes
the feedforward target values of the driving/braking
forces of the wheels W1 to W4 of the actual vehicle 1 by
the braking device of the driving/braking device 3A

15 (hereinafter referred to as the FF target n-th wheel brake
driving/braking forces ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$)), the feedforward
target values of the driving/braking forces of the driving
wheels W1 and W2 of the actual vehicle 1 by the driving
system of the driving/braking device 3A (hereinafter

20 referred to as the FF target n-th wheel driving system
driving/braking forces ($n=1, 2$)), the feedforward target
value of a reduction gear ratio (change gear ratio) of the
speed change gear of the driving/braking device 3A

(hereinafter referred to as the FF target transmission
25 reduction gear ratio), and the feedforward target values
of the steering angles of the steering control wheels W1
and W2 of the actual vehicle 1 by the steering device 3B

- 170 -

(hereinafter referred to as the FF target front wheel steering angle δf_{ff}).

[0332] Incidentally, the FF law 22 corresponds to a means which determines feedforward control inputs in the present invention, and the FF target n-th wheel brake driving/braking force ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) and the FF target n-th wheel driving system driving/braking force ($n=1, 2$) determined here correspond to the feedforward control inputs in the present invention.

[0333] As shown in Fig. 17, the FF target front wheel steering angle δf_{ff} is determined by a processor 230 on the basis of the steering angle θ_h (or on the basis of θ_h and V_{act}) of drive operation inputs. In Fig. 17, it is assumed that the steering device 3B is the actuator-driven steering device. In this case, the processor 230 determines the FF target front wheel steering angle δf_{ff} by the same processing as the processing by the processor 14a of the reference manipulated variable determiner 14. More specifically, the steering angle θ_h is divided by a predetermined overall steering ratio "is" or an overall steering ratio "is" set on the basis of V_{act} thereby to determine δf_{ff} . The value of δf_{ff} thus determined is the same as the value of the unlimited front wheel steering angle δf_{unltd} determined by the processor 14a of the reference manipulated variable determiner 14.

[0334] If the steering device 3B is the actuator-assisted steering device or a mechanical steering device, then it

- 171 -

is unnecessary to determine δf_{ff} . Alternatively, δf_{ff} may be always set to zero. However, if the steering device 3B is the actuator-assisted steering device and has a function for correcting, on the basis of V_{act} , the steering angles of the front wheels W1 and W2 mechanically determined on the basis of the steering angle θ_h , then the correction may be determined on the basis of V_{act} and the obtained correction may be determined as δf_{ff} .

[0335] Supplementally, if the steering device 3B is an actuator-assisted steering device, then the basic steering angles of the front wheels W1 and W2 (the basic values of δf_{act}) are mechanically determined on the basis of the steering angle θ_h , so that δf_{ff} has a meaning as the feedforward target values of the correction amounts of the steering angles of the front wheels W1 and W2 by an actuator.

[0336] Further, the FF target n-th wheel brake driving/braking forces ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) are respectively determined by processors 231a_n ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) on the basis of a brake pedal manipulated variable of drive operation inputs. The graphs shown in the processors 231a_n in the figure respectively are graphs illustrating the relationship between brake pedal manipulated variables and the FF target n-th wheel brake driving/braking forces ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$), the values in the direction of the axis of abscissas in the graphs indicating the values of the brake pedal manipulated variables, while the values in the

- 172 -

direction of the axis of ordinates indicating the FF target n-th wheel brake driving/braking forces. As shown in the graphs of the figure, the FF target n-th wheel brake driving/braking forces (<0) are basically determined such that the magnitudes (absolute values) thereof monotonously increase as the brake pedal manipulated variable increases. In the illustrated examples, the FF target n-th wheel brake driving/braking forces are set such that they are saturated when a brake pedal manipulated variable exceeds a predetermined amount (the increasing rate of the absolute value of the FF target n-th wheel brake driving/braking force relative to an increase in the brake pedal manipulated variable approaches zero or reaches zero), thereby preventing the magnitude of the FF target n-th wheel brake driving/braking force from becoming excessive.

[0337] The FF target n-th wheel driving system driving/braking forces ($n=1, 2$) and the FF target transmission reduction gear ratio are determined by a driving system actuator operation FF target value determiner 232 on the basis of an accelerator (gas) pedal manipulated variable, a shift lever position, and Vact of drive operation inputs. The processing by the driving system actuator operation FF target value determiner 232 may be the same as a method for determining a driving force transmitted from an engine to driving wheels and the reduction gear ratio of a speed change gear on the basis

- 173 -

of an accelerator (gas) pedal manipulated variable, V_{act} , and the shift lever position of the speed change gear in a publicly known regular car, so that detailed explanation thereof in the present description will be omitted.

5 [0338] The above has described the specific processing by the FF law 22 in the present reference example 1.

[0339]

[About the actuator operation target value synthesizer]

10 The processing by the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24 will now be explained in detail. Fig. 18 is a functional block diagram showing the processing by the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24.

[0340] Referring to the figure, regarding the first wheel
15 W1, the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24 determines, by an adder 240, the sum of the FF target first wheel brake driving/braking force of the actuator operation FF target value and the FF target first wheel driving system driving/braking force. Then, the sum is
20 input as an FF total target first wheel driving/braking force FF_{total_1} into an optimum target first driving/braking force determiner 241a_1. Further, the sum of this FF_{total_1} and the FB target first wheel brake driving/braking force $F_{x\,fb\,dmd\_1}$ of the actuator operation
25 FB target value is determined by an adder 242. Then, the sum is input as an unlimited target first wheel driving/braking force $F_{x\,dmd\_1}$ into the optimum target

- 174 -

first driving/braking force determiner 241a_1.

[0341] Regarding the second wheel W2, the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24 determines, by an adder 243, the sum of the FF target second wheel brake driving/braking force of the actuator operation FF target value and the FF target second wheel driving system driving/braking force. Then, the sum is input as an FF total target second wheel driving/braking force FFtotal_2 into an optimum target second driving/braking force determiner 241a_2. Further, the sum of this FFtotal_2 and the FB target second wheel brake driving/braking force Fxfbdmd_2 of the actuator operation FB target value is determined by an adder 244. Then, the sum is input as an unlimited target second wheel driving/braking force Fxdmd_2 into the optimum target second driving/braking force determiner 241a_2.

[0342] Regarding the third wheel W3, the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24 directly inputs an FF target third wheel brake driving/braking force of the actuator operation FF target value as an FF total target third wheel driving/braking force FFtotal_3 into an optimum target third driving/braking force determiner 241a_3. Further, the sum of this FFtotal_3 and the FB target third wheel brake driving/braking force Fxfbdmd_3 of the actuator operation FB target value is determined by an adder 245. Then, the sum is input as an unlimited target third wheel driving/braking force Fxdmd_3 into the

- 175 -

optimum target third driving/braking force determiner
241a_3.

[0343] Regarding the fourth wheel W4, the actuator
operation target value synthesizer 24 directly inputs an
5 FF target fourth wheel brake driving/braking force of the
actuator operation FF target value as an FF total target
fourth wheel driving/braking force FFtotal_4 into an
optimum target fourth driving/braking force determiner
241a_4. Further, the sum of this FFtotal_4 and the FB
10 target fourth wheel brake driving/braking force Fxfbdmd_4
of the actuator operation FB target value is determined by
an adder 246. Then, the sum is input as an unlimited
target fourth wheel driving/braking force Fxdmd_4 into the
optimum target fourth driving/braking force determiner
15 241a_4.

[0344] Here, to generalize the FF total target n-th wheel
driving/braking force FFtotal_n(n=1, 2, 3, 4), it means
the total sum of a feedforward target value of the
driving/braking force of the n-th wheel Wn by an operation
20 of the driving system of the driving/braking device 3A (FF
target n-th wheel driving system driving/braking force)
and a feedforward target value of the driving/braking
force of the n-th wheel Wn by an operation of the braking
device (FF target n-th wheel brake driving/braking force).
25 In this case, according to the embodiments and the
reference examples in the present description, the driving
wheels of the actual vehicle 1 are the front wheels W1 and

- 176 -

W2, and the rear wheels W3 and W4 are the driven wheels; hence, for the rear wheels W3 and W4, the FF target n-th wheel brake driving/braking force ($n=3, 4$) is directly determined as the FF total target n-th wheel

5 driving/braking force FF_{total_n} .

[0345] Further, the unlimited target n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{xdmd_n} ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) is the sum of the FF total target n-th wheel driving/braking force FF_{total_n} and the FB n-th wheel brake driving/braking

10 force, so that it means the total driving/braking force of the n-th wheel required by a feedforward control operation of the driving/braking device 3A (a feedforward control operation based on at least a drive operation input) and a feedback control operation (a feedback control operation
15 based on at least state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err}).

[0346] Then, the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24 determines the target n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{xcmd_n} , which is the final target value of the driving/braking force of each n-th wheel W_n ,
20 by the optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiner 241a_n ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$), and also determines a target n-th wheel slip ratio, which is the final target value of the slip ratio of the n-th wheel.

[0347] In this case, the optimum target n-th
25 driving/braking force determiner 241a_n ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) receives a latest value (current time value) of the actual side slip angle of the n-th wheel W_n (more specifically,

- 177 -

the actual front wheel side slip angle β_{f_act} when $n=1, 2$ or the actual rear wheel side slip angle β_{r_act} when $n=3, 4$) and a latest value (current time value) of the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} in addition to

5 FFtotal_n and Fxdmd_n. Although not shown, the optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiner 241a_n($n=1, 2$) associated with the front wheels W1 and W2 also receives a latest value (current time value) of the actual front wheel steering angle δ_{f_act} . Then, the optimum

10 target n-th driving/braking force determiner 241a_n($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) determines the target n-th wheel driving/braking force Fxcmd_n and the target n-th wheel slip ratio on the basis of the inputs supplied thereto, respectively, as will be described later.

15 [0348] Further, the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24 inputs the active steering FB target lateral force Fyfbdmd_f of the actuator operation FB target value and the FF target front wheel steering angle δ_{f_ff} of the actuator operation FF target value into an

20 optimum target active steering angle determiner 247 so as to determine target front wheel steering angles δ_{fcmd} , which are the final steering angle target values of the front wheels W1 and W2, by the optimum target active steering angle determiner 247. Incidentally, the δ_{fcmd}

25 means the final target values of the steering angles themselves (the steering angles based on the longitudinal direction of the actual vehicle 1) of the front wheels W1

and W2 by an operation of an actuator if the steering device 3B is the actuator-driven steering device.

Meanwhile, if the steering device 3B is the actuator-assisted steering device, then it means the final target values of the correction amounts of the steering angles of the front wheels W1 and W2 by an operation of an actuator.

[0349] The actuator operation target value synthesizer 24 directly outputs the FF target n-th wheel driving system driving/braking force($n=1, 2$) of the actuator operation FF

target value as the target n-th wheel driving system driving/braking force, which is the final target value of the driving/braking force of the n-th wheel Wn by an operation of the driving system of the driving/braking

device 3A. Moreover, the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24 directly outputs the FF target transmission reduction gear ratio of the actuator operation FF target value as a target transmission reduction gear ratio, which is the final target value of the reduction gear ratio (speed change ratio) of the speed change gear of the driving/braking device 3A.

[0350] The processing by the optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiner 241a_n($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) will be explained below in detail. Fig. 19 is a flowchart showing the processing by the optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiner 241a_n.

[0351] Referring to the figure, first, in S100, it is preconditioned that the side slip angle of the n-th wheel

- 179 -

W_n (n=1, 2, 3, 4) is an actual side slip angle (more specifically, the actual front wheel side slip angle β_{f_act} for n=1, 2 and the actual rear wheel side slip angle β_{r_act} for n=3, 4), and a road surface friction coefficient (the coefficient of friction between the n-th wheel W_n and a road surface) is the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} . Then, based on the precondition, an n-th wheel driving/braking force candidate F_xcand_n, which is the value of the driving/braking force of the n-th wheel W_n closest to the unlimited target n-th wheel driving/braking force F_xdmd_n (including a case of agreement therebetween), and an n-th wheel slip ratio candidate S_{cand}_n, which is the value of the slip ratio of the n-th wheel W_n associated therewith, are determined.

[0352] Here, in general, there is a predetermined correlation based on the characteristics of wheel tires or the characteristics of a suspension device among the side slip angle and a road surface reaction force (a driving/braking force, a lateral force, and a ground contact load), a slip ratio and a road surface friction coefficient of each wheel. For example, there is a correlation indicated by expressions (2.57), (2.58), (2.72), and (2.73) in the aforesaid non-patent document 1 among a side slip angle, a road surface reaction force (a driving/braking force, a lateral force, and a ground contact load), a slip ratio and a road surface friction coefficient of each wheel. Moreover, if, for example, the

- 180 -

ground contact load and the road surface friction coefficient are set to be constant, then there is a correlation as shown in Fig. 2.36 of the aforesaid non-patent document 1 among the side slip angle, the driving/braking force, the lateral force, and the slip ratio of each wheel. Hence, the road surface reaction force and the slip ratio of each wheel when the side slip angle and the road surface friction coefficient individually take certain values cannot respectively take independent values; instead, the values thereof change according to the aforesaid correlations (hereinafter referred to as wheel characteristics relations). The slip ratio takes a negative value when the driving/braking force is a driving/braking force in the driving direction (>0), while it takes a positive value when the driving/braking force is a driving/braking force in the braking direction (<0).

[0353] Thus, the processing in S100 in the present reference example 1 determines a driving/braking force that is closest to or agrees with the unlimited target n -th wheel driving/braking force F_{xdmd_n} (a driving/braking force that provides a minimum absolute value of a difference from F_{xdmd_n}) and a slip ratio associated with the driving/braking force from the actual side slip angle β_{f_act} or β_{r_act} (latest value) of the n -th wheel W_n and the estimated road surface friction coefficient μ_{estm} (latest value) on the basis of a map which shows a

- 181 -

relationship among a side slip angle, a road surface friction coefficient, a driving/braking force, and a slip ratio of the n-th wheel W_n and which has been prepared in advance. Then, the driving/braking force and the slip ratio determined as described above are determined as an n-th wheel driving/braking force candidate F_{xcand_n} and an n-th wheel slip ratio candidate S_{cand_n} .

[0354] For the map used for the processing, the aforesaid wheel characteristics relationship, for example, may be specified or estimated beforehand by various experiments or the like or on the basis of the tire characteristics of the wheels W_1 to W_4 or the characteristics of the suspension device 3C, and the map may be prepared on the basis of the specified or estimated wheel characteristics relationship. The ground contact loads of n-th wheels W_n may be added as variable parameters to the map. In this case, the actual ground contact load F_{zact_n} of the n-th wheel W_n may be input to the optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiner 241a_n to determine F_{xcand_n} and S_{cand_n} from the actual side slip angle β_{f_act} or β_{r_act} , the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} , and the actual ground contact load F_{zact_n} of the n-th wheel W_n . However, fluctuations in the actual ground contact load F_{zact_n} are relatively small in general, so that the actual ground contact load F_{zact_n} may be regarded as a fixed value.

[0355] Supplementally, if F_{xdmd_n} exists in a range of

- 182 -

values of driving/braking forces that can be generated
(that can be applied from a road surface) in the n-th
wheel Wn (driving/braking forces that can be generated on
the basis of the aforesaid wheel characteristics

5 relationship) corresponding to a set of the actual side
slip angle β_{f_act} or β_{r_act} and the estimated road surface
friction coefficient μ_{estm} of the n-th wheel Wn or a set
of these and the actual ground contact load F_{zact_n} , then
the F_{xdmd_n} may be directly determined as F_{xcand_n} .

10 Further, if F_{xdmd_n} deviates from the range, then an upper
limit value (>0) or a lower limit value (<0) of the range,
whichever is closer to F_{xdmd_n} may be determined as
 F_{xcand_n} .

[0356] Further, in association with the set of the actual
15 side slip angle β_{f_act} or β_{r_act} and the estimated road
surface friction coefficient μ_{estm} of the n-th wheel Wn or
in association with the set of these and the actual ground
contact load F_{zact_n} , a relationship between the slip
ratio and the driving/braking force that can be generated
20 in the n-th wheel Wn (a relationship between the slip
ratio and the driving/braking force that can be generated
according to the wheel characteristics relationship) will
generally be a relationship in which the driving/braking
forces have peak values (extremal values) with respect to
25 changes in the slip ratio (a graph having slip ratio
values on the axis of abscissas and the driving/braking
force magnitude values on the axis of ordinates will be a

- 183 -

graph that bulges upward). For this reason, in some cases, there are two types of slip ratio values that correspond to the values of driving/braking forces whose absolute values are smaller than the peak values. If there are two
5 types of slip ratio values corresponding to F_{xcand_n} as described above, then, of the two types of slip ratio values, the slip ratio value that is closer to zero may be determined as an n-th wheel slip ratio candidate $Scand\_n$. In other words, in the relationship between the slip ratio
10 and the driving/braking force of the n-th wheel W_n (the relationship based on the wheel characteristics relationship), the n-th wheel slip ratio candidate $Scand\_n$ may be determined within a range between the slip ratio value, at which the driving/braking force reaches a peak
15 value, and zero.

[0357] Supplementally, within the range between the slip ratio value, at which the driving/braking force reaches a peak value, and zero, the absolute value of a driving/braking force monotonously increases as the
20 absolute value of the slip ratio increases from zero.

[0358] Subsequently, the procedure proceeds to S102 wherein an n-th wheel driving/braking force at the generation of a maximum moment F_{xmmax_n} and an n-th wheel slip ratio at the generation of a maximum moment S_{mmax_n} ,
25 which is a slip ratio corresponding to the above F_{xmmax_n} , are determined under the same precondition as that in S100. Here, the n-th wheel driving/braking force at the

- 184 -

generation of a maximum moment F_{xmmax_n} means the value of a driving/braking force component of a road surface reaction force that causes a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 by a road surface reaction force to become maximum toward the same polarity (direction) as the polarity of the aforesaid feedback yaw moment basic required value M_{fbdmd} , the driving/braking force component being a component in a road surface reaction force that can be generated in the n-th wheel W_n when the side slip angle of the n-th wheel W_n is the actual side slip angle β_{f_act} or β_{r_act} and the road surface friction coefficient is the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} (more specifically, the resultant force of the driving/braking force and the lateral force that can be applied to the n-th wheel W_n from a road surface according to the wheel characteristics relationship). In this case, F_{xmmax_n} and S_{mmax_n} are determined within a range wherein the absolute value of the driving/braking force monotonously increases as the absolute value of the slip ratio increases from zero in the relationship between the driving/braking force and the slip ratio of the n-th wheel W_n (the relationship based on the wheel characteristics relationship). Thus, S_{mmax_n} is determined to take a value between the slip ratio value, at which the driving/braking force reaches a peak value, and zero.

[0359] In S102, regarding the front wheels W_1 and W_2

(when $n=1$ or 2), the n -th wheel driving/braking force at the generation of a maximum moment $F_{x\max\_n}$ and the n -th wheel slip ratio at the generation of a maximum moment $S_{\max\_n}$ corresponding thereto are determined from, for

5 example, the actual front wheel side slip angle β_{f_act} , the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} , and the actual front wheel steering angle δ_{f_act} according to a map prepared beforehand (a map showing the relationship among front wheel side slip angles, road surface friction

10 coefficients, front wheel steering angles, driving/braking forces at the generation of maximum moments, and slip ratios at the generation of maximum moments (the relationship based on the wheel characteristics relationship). Alternatively, from among the sets of

15 driving/braking forces and lateral forces of the n -th wheel W_n ($n=1$ or 2) that can be generated with respect to sets of β_{f_act} and μ_{estm} , the set of a driving/braking force and a lateral force that causes a moment in the yaw direction generated by the resultant force thereof about

20 the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 to reach its maximum level is exploratively determined on the basis of the map showing the relationship among the front wheel side slip angles, road surface friction coefficients, slip ratios, driving/braking forces, and lateral forces,

25 and the actual front wheel steering angle δ_{f_act} . Then, the driving/braking force and the slip ratio associated with the set may be determined as $F_{x\max\_n}$ and $S_{\max\_n}$,

respectively.

[0360] Further, regarding the rear wheels W3 and W4, (when $n=3$ or 4), the n -th wheel driving/braking force at the generation of a maximum moment $F_{x\max\_n}$ and the n -th wheel slip ratio at the generation of a maximum moment $S_{\max\_n}$ corresponding thereto are determined from, for example, the actual rear wheel side slip angle β_{r_act} and the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} according to a map prepared beforehand (a map showing the relationship among rear wheel side slip angles, road surface friction coefficients, driving/braking forces at the generation of maximum moments, and slip ratios at the generation of maximum moments (the relationship based on the wheel characteristics relationship). Alternatively, from among the sets of driving/braking forces and lateral forces of the n -th wheel W_n ($n=3$ or 4) that can be generated with respect to sets of β_{r_act} and μ_{estm} , the set of a driving/braking force and a lateral force that causes a moment in the yaw direction generated by the resultant force thereof about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 to reach a maximum level is exploratively determined according to the map showing the relationship among the rear wheel side slip angles, the road surface friction coefficients, the slip ratios, the driving/braking forces, and the lateral forces. Then, the driving/braking force and the slip ratio associated with the set may be determined as $F_{x\max\_n}$ and $S_{\max\_n}$,

- 187 -

respectively.

[0361] Incidentally, the processing in S102 may include the actual ground contact load F_{zact_n} of the n-th wheel W_n as a variable parameter as with the case explained in relation to the processing in S100 described above.

[0362] Subsequently, the processing in S104 to S112 is carried out, as will be described later, so as to determine the target n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{xcmd_n} . In this case, the target n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{xcmd_n} is determined to satisfy the following conditions (1) to (3). Regarding conditions (1) to (3), the priority rank is higher in the order of (1), (2), and (3). If no target n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{xcmd_n} that satisfies all the conditions (1) to (3) can be determined, then the target n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{xcmd_n} is determined such that a condition with higher priority is preferentially satisfied.

[0363]

Condition (1): If an FF total target n-th wheel driving/braking force FF_{total_n} and a target n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{xcmd_n} are driving/braking forces in the braking direction, then the magnitude (the absolute value) of the target n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{xcmd_n} is not smaller than the magnitude (the absolute value) of the FF total target n-th wheel driving/braking force FF_{total_n} . In other words, $0 > F_{xcmd\_n} > FF_{total\_n}$ does not happen.

Condition (2): If the target n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{xcmd_n} has the same polarity as that of the n-th wheel driving/braking force at the generation of a maximum moment F_{xmmax_n} , then the magnitude (the absolute value) of F_{xcmd_n} does not exceed the magnitude (the absolute value) of the F_{xmmax_n} . In other words, $F_{xcmd\_n} > F_{xmmax\_n} > 0$ or $F_{xcmd\_n} < F_{xmmax\_n} < 0$ does not happen.

Condition (3): The target n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{xcmd_n} agrees with the n-th wheel driving/braking force candidate F_{xcand_n} as much as possible (more precisely, the absolute value of a difference between F_{xcmd_n} and F_{xcand_n} is minimized).

Here, condition (1) is a condition for preventing the target n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{xcmd_n} from becoming smaller than the driving/braking force in the braking direction of the n-th wheel W_n of the actual vehicle 1 (this corresponds to FF_{total_n}) required by an operation of the brake pedal performed by the driver of the actual vehicle 1. Supplementally, according to the embodiments and reference examples in the present description, the rear wheels W_3 and W_4 are driven wheels, so that the FF total target n-th wheel driving/braking force $FF_{total\_n}(n=3, 4)$ and the target n-th wheel driving/braking force $F_{xcmd\_n}(n=3, 4)$ related to the rear wheels W_3 and W_4 always take values of zero or less.

- 189 -

Therefore, regarding the rear wheels W3 and W4, condition (1) is equivalent to a condition that "the magnitude (the absolute value) of the target n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{xcmd_n} does not become smaller than the magnitude (the absolute value) of the FF total target n-th wheel driving/braking force FF_{total_n} ."

[0364] Further, condition (2) is a condition for preventing a lateral force generated in the n-th wheel W_n on the basis of the target n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{xcmd_n} from becoming excessively small.

[0365] Further, condition (3) is a condition for satisfying as much as possible the control requirements (targets) of operations of the actuator devices 3 determined by the actuator operation FB target value determiner 20b and the FF law 22. Incidentally, F_{xcand_n} is, as described above, the value of a driving/braking force closest to the unlimited target n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{xdmd_n} (including a case of agreement therebetween) within a range of the values of driving/braking forces that can be generated in the n-th wheel W_n according to the wheel characteristics relationship (a wheel characteristics relationship observed when it is preconditioned that the side slip angle of the n-th wheel W_n is an actual side slip angle β_{f_act} or β_{r_act} and a road surface friction coefficient is the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm}). Therefore, the condition (3) is, in other words, equivalent to a

- 190 -

condition that the target n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{xcmd_n} takes a value within the range of values of driving/braking forces that can be generated in the n-th wheel W_n according to the wheel characteristics

5 relationship (the wheel characteristics relationship observed when it is preconditioned that the side slip angle of the n-th wheel W_n is the actual side slip angle β_{f_act} or β_{r_act} and a road surface friction coefficient is the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm}) and agrees

10 with or approximates (the absolute value of a difference from F_{xdmd_n} is minimized) the unlimited target n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{xdmd_n} (a driving/braking force based on a control requirement) as much as possible.

[0366] To be more specific, the processing of S104 to

15 S112 described above is carried out as follows. First, the procedure proceeds to S104 wherein it is determined whether the magnitude relationship between F_{xcand_n}

determined in S100 and F_{xmmax_n} determined in S102 is $0 > F_{xmmax\_n} > F_{xcand\_n}$ or $0 < F_{xmmax\_n} < F_{xcand\_n}$. If the result

20 of the determination is NO, then the procedure proceeds to S106 wherein the value of F_{xcand_n} is substituted into the target n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{xcmd_n} . More

specifically, if F_{xcand_n} and F_{xmmax_n} have polarities that are different from each other or if the F_{xcand_n} and

25 F_{xmmax_n} have the same polarity and the magnitude (the absolute value) of F_{xcand_n} is the magnitude (the absolute value) of F_{xmmax_n} or less, then the value of F_{xcand_n} is

- 191 -

directly substituted into Fxcmd_n. Incidentally, the value of Fxcand_n is substituted into Fxcmd_n (provided Fxcmd_n=0) also when Fxcand_n=0 (at this time, Fxdmd_n is also zero).

5 [0367] Meanwhile, if the determination result in S104 is YES, then the procedure proceeds to S108 wherein the value of Fxmmax_n (the value determined in S102) is substituted into the target n-th wheel driving/braking force Fxcmd_n.

10 [0368] By the processing up to this point, Fxcmd_n is determined such that the conditions (2) and (3) are satisfied (provided that condition (2) is given a higher priority).

[0369] After the processing in S106 or S108, the procedure proceeds to S110 wherein it is determined

15 whether the magnitude relationship between the FF total target n-th wheel driving/braking force FFtotal_n and the current target n-th wheel driving/braking force Fxcmd_n (the value determined in S106 or S108) is expressed by $0 > Fxcmd\_n > FFtotal\_n$. If the result of the determination

20 is YES, then the procedure proceeds to S112 wherein FFtotal_n is re-substituted into the target n-th wheel driving/braking force Fxcmd_n. More specifically, if the FF total target n-th wheel driving/braking force FFtotal_n and the n-th wheel driving/braking force candidate Fxcmd_n

25 determined in S106 or S108 are driving/braking forces in the braking direction and the magnitude (the absolute value) of Fxcmd_n is smaller than the magnitude (the

- 192 -

absolute value) of FFtotal_n, then the value of FFtotal_n is substituted into Fxcmd_n. If the determination result in S110 is NO, then the value of Fxcmd_n at that instant is maintained as it is.

5 [0370] By the aforesaid processing in S104 to S112, as previously described, basically, the target n-th wheel driving/braking force Fxcmd_n is determined such that the conditions (1) to (3) are satisfied. Further, if no target n-th wheel driving/braking force Fxcmd_n that
10 satisfies all the conditions (1) to (3) can be determined, then the target n-th wheel driving/braking force Fxcmd_n is determined such that a condition having a higher priority is preferentially satisfied.

[0371] If the determination result in S110 is YES, or
15 after the processing in S112, the processing in S114 is carried out. In this S114, a slip ratio associated with Fxcmd_n determined by the processing in S106 to S112 as described above is determined as the target n-th wheel slip ratio Scmd_n. In this case, by the processing in
20 S104 to S112, Fxcmd_n takes the value of one of Fxcand_n, Fxmmax_n, and FFtotal_n. And, if Fxcmd_n=Fxcand_n, then the n-th wheel slip ratio candidate Scand_n determined in S100 is determined as Scmd_n. If Fxcmd_n=Fxmmax_n, then the n-th wheel slip ratio at the generation of a maximum
25 moment Smmax_n determined in S102 is determined as Scmd_n. If Fxcmd_n=FFtotal_n, then the slip ratio associated with FFtotal_n is determined according to, for example, a map

- 193 -

used for the processing in S100, and the determined slip ratio may be determined as $Scmd\_n$. In this case, if there are two types of values of the slip ratio associated with $FFtotal\_n$, then a slip ratio value that is closer to zero (a value within the range between a slip ratio value, at which the driving/braking force of the n-th wheel Wn reaches a peak value, and zero) may be determined as $Scmd\_n$. If $FFtotal\_n$ deviates from the range of the values of driving/braking forces that can be generated in the n-th wheel Wn in the map, then a slip ratio associated with the value of the driving/braking force that is closest to $FFtotal\_n$ within the range may be determined as $Scmd\_n$.

[0372] The above has explained in detail the processing by the optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiner 241a_n($n=1, 2, 3, 4$).

[0373] In the present reference example 1, the target n-th wheel driving/braking force $Fxcmd\_n$ has been determined first and then the target n-th wheel slip ratio $Scmd\_n$ associated therewith has been determined; reversely, however, the target n-th wheel slip ratio $Scmd\_n$ may be determined, and then the target n-th wheel driving/braking force $Fxcmd\_n$ associated therewith may be determined. In this case, the target n-th wheel slip ratio $Scmd\_n$ may be determined by the same processing as that in S104 to S112 described above on the basis of conditions related to the target n-th wheel slip ratio $Scmd\_n$ associated with the

- 194 -

aforesaid conditions (1) to (3). Then, after that, Fxcmd_n associated with the Scmd_n may be determined. In this case, in the relationship between the slip ratios and the driving/braking forces based on the wheel

5 characteristics relationship of the n-th wheel W_n, Scmd_n is determined within a range between the slip ratio value, at which the driving/braking force reaches a peak value, and zero.

[0374] The processing by the optimum target active

10 steering angle determiner 247 will now be explained. Fig. 20 is a functional block diagram showing the processing by the optimum target active steering angle determiner 247.

[0375] Referring to the figure, the optimum target active steering angle determiner 247 first determines, by a

15 processor 247a on the basis of Fyfbdmd_f, the FB active steering angle δf_{fb} , which indicates change amounts of the steering angles of the front wheels W1 and W2 required for the actual vehicle 1 to generate the active steering FB target lateral force Fyfbdmd_f determined by the

20 actuator operation FB target value determiner 20b in the front wheels W1 and W2 (more specifically, the resultant force of a lateral force of the front wheel W1 and a lateral force of the front wheel W2 is changed by

Fyfbdmd_f). In this case, the processor 247a determines

25 the cornering power Kf₁ of the first wheel W1 according to a predetermined function expression or a map on the basis of, for example, the actual ground contact load

- 195 -

Fzact_1 of the first wheel W1, and also determines the cornering power Kf_2 of the second wheel W2 according to a predetermined function expression or a map on the basis of the actual ground contact load Fzact_2 of the second wheel W2. The function expression or map is set in advance on the basis of the tire characteristics of the front wheels W1 and W2 of the actual vehicle 1. Then, the cornering powers Kf_1 and Kf_2 are used to determine the FB active steering angle δf_{fb} according to the following expression 30.

[0376]

$$\delta f_{fb} = (1 / (Kf_1 + Kf_2)) \cdot Fyfbcmd_f \quad \text{..... Expression 30}$$

The FB active steering angle δf_{fb} determined as shown above corresponds to the correction amount of a front wheel side slip angle required to change the resultant force of the lateral forces of the front wheels W1 and W2 by Fyfbcmd_f.

[0377] Normally, changes in the actual ground contact loads Fzact_1 and Fzact_2 are small, so that the coefficient $(1 / (Kf_1 + Kf_2))$ by which Fyfbcmd_f is multiplied in expression 30 may be set to a constant value.

[0378] Subsequently, the optimum target active steering angle determiner 247 adds the δf_{fb} determined as described above to the FF target front wheel steering angle δf_{ff} by an adder 247b so as to determine the target front wheel steering angle δf_{cmd} .

- 196 -

[0379] If the active steering FB target lateral force F_{yfbcmd_f} based on the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} is not determined or if $F_{yfbcmd\_f}=0$ is always maintained, then δf_{ff} may be directly determined as the target front wheel steering angle δf_{cmd} .

[0380] The above has presented the detailed explanation of the processing by the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24.

[0381]

[About the actuator drive control unit]

The actuator drive control unit 26 operates the actuator devices 3 of the actual vehicle 1 such that the target value determined by the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24 is satisfied. For example, the actuator manipulated variable of the driving system is determined such that the driving/braking force (the driving/braking force in the driving direction) of the first wheel W1 by an operation of the driving system of the driving/braking device 3A becomes the target first wheel driving system driving/braking force, and the driving system is operated on the basis thereof. Further, the actuator manipulated variable of the braking device is determined such that the driving/braking force of the actual road surface reaction force of the first wheel W1 (the sum of the driving/braking force of the first wheel W1 by an operation of the driving system and the driving/braking force of the first wheel W1 by an

- 197 -

operation of the braking device (the driving/braking force in the braking direction)) becomes the target first wheel driving/braking force F_{xcmd_1} , and the braking device is actuated on the basis thereof. Further, in this case, the operation of the driving system or the braking device is adjusted so as to bring a difference between the actual slip ratio of the first wheel $W1$ and the target first wheel slip ratio $Scmd\_1$ close to zero. The same applies to the remaining wheels $W2$ to $W4$.

[0382] Further, if the steering device 3B is an actuator-driven steering device, then the actuator manipulated variable of the steering device 3B is determined such that the actual front wheel steering angle δf_act agrees with the target front wheel steering angle δf_cmd , and the operation of the steering device 3B is controlled on the basis thereof. If the steering device 3B is an actuator-assisted steering device, then the operation of the steering device 3B is controlled such that the actual front wheel steering angle δf_act agrees with the sum of the target front wheel steering angle δf_cmd and a mechanical steering angle component based on the steering angle θh .

[0383] The reduction gear ratio of the speed change gear of the driving system of the driving/braking device 3A is controlled on the basis of the target transmission reduction gear ratio.

[0384] Regarding the control amounts of the

- 198 -

driving/braking forces, the lateral forces and the like of the wheels W1 to W4, the operations of the driving/braking device 3A, the steering device 3B, and the suspension device 3C tend to interfere with each other. In such a case, the operations of the driving/braking device 3A, the steering device 3B, and the suspension device 3C are desirably controlled integrally by the processing of non-interference in order to control the control amounts to target values.

10 [0385]

[Reference example 2]

A reference example 2 related to the embodiments of the present invention will now be explained with reference to Fig. 21 to Fig. 23. The present reference example 2 differs from the aforesaid reference example 1 only in some processing, so that the explanation will be focused mainly on the different aspect and the explanation of the same portions will be omitted. For the like constituent parts or the like functional parts as those in the reference example 1, the explanation of the reference example 2 will use the like reference characters as those in the reference example 1.

[0386] Supplementally, this reference example 2 differs from a second embodiment only in the processing by an actuator operation target value synthesizer 24 associated with the second embodiment of the present invention, which will be discussed later. Accordingly, the following

- 199 -

explanation will serve also as the explanation of the second embodiment expect for the explanation related to the processing by the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24.

5 [0387] In the aforesaid reference example 1, as the actuator operation FB target value for the driving/braking device 3A, the FB target n-th wheel brake driving/braking force $F_{x\text{fb}dmd\_n}$, which means a correction required value (a correction required value for bringing the state amount
10 errors γ_{err} and β_{err} close to zero) of the driving/braking force to be applied to the n-th wheel $W_n(n=1, 2, 3, 4)$ by an operation of the braking device of the driving/braking device 3A, has been determined. In place of this, according to the present reference example 2, an FB target
15 n-th wheel brake moment $M_{\text{fb}dmd\_n}(n=1, 2, 3, 4)$ is determined as the actuator operation FB target value for the driving/braking device 3A. The FB target n-th wheel brake moment $M_{\text{fb}dmd\_n}$ means the correction required value (the correction required value for bringing the state
20 amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} close to zero) of a moment in the yaw direction generated about a center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 by a road surface reaction force (more specifically, the resultant force of a driving/braking force and a lateral force) to be applied
25 to the wheels W1 to W4 by operating the braking device of the driving/braking device 3A. Further, according to the present reference example 2, the FB target n-th wheel

- 200 -

brake moment M_{fbdmd_n} is used to determine an actuator operation target value.

[0388] Thus, the present reference example 2 differs from the aforesaid reference example 1 in the processing by an actuator operation FB target value determiner 20b of the FB distribution law 20 and the processing by an actuator operation target value synthesizer 24. And, the constructions and processing other than these are the same as those of the reference example 1.

[0389] The following will explain the processing by the actuator operation FB target value determiner 20b and the processing by the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24 in the present reference example 2.

[0390] Fig. 21 is a functional block diagram showing the processing function of the actuator operation FB target value determiner 20b in the present reference example 2. Referring to the figure, the actuator operation FB target value determiner 20b first carries out the same processing as that in the reference example 1 by processors 220 and 221 to determine the feedback yaw moment basic required value M_{fbdmd} and a dead-zone excess feedback yaw moment required value M_{fbdmd_a} , respectively. Incidentally, $M_{fbdmd\_a}=M_{fbdmd}$ may be set by omitting the processor 221.

[0391] Subsequently, the actuator operation FB target value determiner 20b carries out the processing by an actuator operation FB target value distribution processor 222 to determine an actuator operation FB target value.

- 201 -

In this case, according to the present reference example 2, each FB target n-th wheel brake moment M_{fbdmd_n} ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) is determined through the intermediary of processors 222f_n and 222g_n. Further, an active steering FB target lateral force F_{yfbdmd_f} is determined by a processor 222e. The processing by the processor 222e is the same as that in the aforesaid reference example 1. Incidentally, the processor 222e may be omitted.

[0392] Each FB target n-th wheel brake moment M_{fbdmd_n} ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) is determined as follows. Basically, the FB target n-th wheel brake moment M_{fbdmd_n} ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) is determined such that, if M_{fbdmd_a} is positive, then the moment is generated by manipulating (correcting) the road surface reaction forces of the left wheels W1 and W3 of the actual vehicle 1, and if M_{fbdmd_a} is negative, then the moment is generated by manipulating (correcting) the road surface reaction forces of the right wheels W2 and W4 of the actual vehicle 1.

[0393] To be more specific, first, each n-th wheel distribution gain K_n is determined by the processor 222f_n ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) associated with the wheels W1 to W4. The n-th wheel distribution gain K_n is determined in the same manner as that in the reference example 1. More specifically, K_1 and K_2 associated with the front wheels W1 and W2 are respectively determined as shown by, for example, the graph in the aforesaid Fig. 14(a) on the basis of the actual front wheel side slip angle β_{f_act} as

the front wheel gain adjustment parameter. Further, K3 and K4 associated with the rear wheels W3 and W4 are respectively determined as shown by, for example, the graph of the aforesaid Fig. 14(b) on the basis of the actual rear wheel side slip angle β_{r_act} as the rear wheel gain adjustment parameter. Then, each processor 222f_n(n=1, 2, 3, 4) multiplies Mfbdmd_a by the n-th wheel distribution gain Kn thereby to determine an n-th wheel distribution moment basic value Mfb_n. The polarity (direction) of Mfb_n thus determined is the same as Mfbdmd_a. The n-th wheel distribution gain Kn may be determined in any one manner explained in the aforesaid reference example 1, besides it is determined as described above on the basis of β_{f_act} or β_{r_act} . And, in this case, the front wheel gain adjustment parameter and the rear wheel gain adjustment parameter may use parameters other than β_{f_act} or β_{r_act} , as with the aforesaid reference example 1.

[0394] Subsequently, the actuator operation FB target value distribution processor 222 passes each of the n-th wheel distribution moment basic values Mfb_n(n=1, 2, 3, 4), which has been determined as described above, through a limiter 222g_n associated with the n-th wheel Wn to determine each of the FB target n-th wheel brake moments Mfbdmd_n.

[0395] Here, the graphs of the limiters 222g_n(n=1, 2, 3, 4) in Fig. 21 are graphs showing the relationships between

Mfb_n and Mfbdmd_n, the values in the direction of the axis of abscissas related to the graphs being the values of Mfb_n, while the values in the direction of the axis of ordinates being the values of Mfbdmd_n.

5 [0396] Among the limiters 222g_n, the limiters 222g_1 and 222g_3 associated with the first wheel W1 and the third wheel W3 directly output Mfb_n as Mfbdmd_n without processing it only if the values of Mfb_n(n=1, 3) supplied thereto are zero or positive values. If Mfb_n is a
10 negative value, then the value of Mfbdmd_n to be output is set to zero regardless of the value of Mfb_n. In other words, Mfbdmd_n is determined by placing a restriction on Mfb_n by setting zero as the lower limit value.

[0397] Meanwhile, the limiters 222g_2 and 222g_4
15 associated with the second wheel W2 and the fourth wheel W4 directly output Mfb_n as Mfbdmd_n without processing it only if the values of Mfb_n(n=2, 4) supplied thereto are zero or negative values. If Mfb_n is a positive value, then the value of Mfbdmd_n to be output is set to zero
20 regardless of the value of Mfb_n. In other words, Mfbdmd_n is determined by placing a restriction on Mfb_n by setting zero as the upper limit value.

[0398] By determining the FB target n-th wheel brake moment Mfbdmd_n(n=1, 2, 3, 4) as described above, if
25 Mfbdmd_a>0, then the road surface reaction forces of the left wheels W1 and W3 of the actual vehicle 1 are corrected thereby to determine Mfbdmd_n such that a moment

in the yaw direction that is substantially equal to M_{fbdmd_a} is generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1. In this case, M_{fbdmd_1} and M_{fbdmd_3} of the first wheel W1 and the third wheel W3, respectively, will be proportional to M_{fbdmd_a} (a value obtained by multiplying M_{fbdmd_a} by $K1$ or $K3$). As a result, the relationship between changes in M_{fbdmd_a} and changes in M_{fbdmd_1} and M_{fbdmd_3} will be a proportional relationship. Further, the first wheel distribution gain $K1$ as the front wheel gain and the third wheel distribution gain $K3$ as a rear wheel gain in the proportional relationship will change on the basis of a front wheel gain adjustment parameter (β_{f_act} in the present reference example) and a rear wheel gain adjustment parameter (β_{r_act} in the present reference example), respectively.

[0399] If $M_{fbdmd\_a} < 0$, then M_{fbdmd_n} is determined such that a moment in the yaw direction that is substantially equal to M_{fbdmd_a} is generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 by correcting the road surface reaction forces of the right wheels W2 and W4 of the actual vehicle 1 by an operation of the braking device of the driving/braking device 3A. In this case, M_{fbdmd_2} and M_{fbdmd_4} of the second wheel W2 and the fourth wheel W4, respectively, will be proportional to M_{fbdmd_a} (a value obtained by multiplying M_{fbdmd_a} by $K2$ or $K4$). As a result, the relationship between changes in M_{fbdmd_a} and changes in M_{fbdmd_2} and M_{fbdmd_4} will be a

proportional relation. Further, the second wheel distribution gain K_2 as the front wheel gain and the fourth wheel distribution gain K_4 as a rear wheel gain in the proportional relation will change on the basis of a front wheel gain adjustment parameter (β_{f_act} in the present reference example) and a rear wheel gain adjustment parameter (β_{r_act} in the present reference example), respectively.

[0400] The limiters $222g\_n(n=1, 3)$ associated with the first wheel W_1 and the third wheel W_3 may determine $Mfbdmd\_n$ by placing a restriction on Mfb_n by setting a value that is slightly smaller than zero as the lower limit value of $Mfbdmd\_n$. Similarly, the limiters $222g\_n(n=2, 4)$ associated with the second wheel W_2 and the fourth wheel W_4 may determine $Mfbdmd\_n$ by placing a restriction on Mfb_n by setting a value that is slightly larger than zero as the upper limit value of $Mfbdmd\_n$.

[0401] The above has explained in detail the processing by the actuator operation FB target value determiner 20b in the present reference example 2.

[0402] The processing by the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24 in the present reference example 2 will now be explained with reference to Fig. 22 and Fig. 23. Fig. 22 is a functional block diagram showing the processing function of the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24, and Fig. 23 is a flowchart illustrating the processing by an optimum target n -th driving/braking force determiner of the processing function.

- 206 -

[0403] Referring to Fig. 22, the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24 in the present reference example 2 is equipped with an optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiner 241b_n(n=1, 2, 3, 4)

5 which determines a target n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{xcmd_n} and a target n-th wheel slip ratio S_{cmd_n} and an optimum active steering angle determiner 247 which determines a target front wheel steering angle δf_{cmd} .

[0404] The processing by the optimum active steering
10 angle determiner 247 is the same as that in the reference example 1. Meanwhile, the processing by the optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiner 241b_n differs from that in the reference example 1. Further, as with the aforesaid reference example 1, the actuator
15 operation target value synthesizer 24 outputs an FF target first wheel driving system driving/braking force, an FF target second wheel driving system driving/braking force, and an FF target transmission reduction gear ratio of the actuator operation FF target value determined by the
20 aforesaid FF law 22 as a target first wheel driving system driving/braking force, a target second wheel driving system driving/braking force, and a target transmission reduction gear ratio, respectively.

[0405] In the present reference example 2, each of the
25 optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiners 241b_n(n=1, 2) associated with the front wheels W1 and W2 receives an FF total target n-th wheel driving/braking

- 207 -

force FF_{total_n} , which is the sum of an FF target n-th wheel brake driving/braking force and an FF target n-th wheel driving system driving/braking force (this is determined by an adder 240, as with the reference example 1) of the actuator operation FF target value determined by the FF law 22, and an FB target n-th wheel brake moment M_{fbdmd_n} of the actuator operation FB target value determined by the actuator operation FB target value determiner 20b. The optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiners $241b\_n(n=1, 2)$ associated with the front wheels W1 and W2 receive a latest value (a current time value) of the actual front wheel side slip angle β_{f_act} and a latest value (a current time value) of an estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} , as with the reference example 1. In addition, although not shown, a latest value (a current time value) of the actual front wheel steering angle δ_{f_act} is also input to the optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiner $241b\_n(n=1, 2)$.

[0406] Further, each of the optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiners $241b\_n(n=3, 4)$ associated with the rear wheels W3 and W4 receives an FF target n-th wheel brake driving/braking force of the actuator operation FF target value determined by the FF law 22 as the FF total target n-th wheel driving/braking force FF_{total_n} and also receives an FB target n-th wheel brake moment M_{fbdmd_n} of the actuator operation FB target value determined by the actuator operation FB target value

- 208 -

determiner 20b. Each of the optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiners 241b_n(n=3, 4) associated with the rear wheels W3 and W4 also receives a latest value (a current time value) of the actual rear wheel side slip angle β_{r_act} and a latest value (a current time value) of an estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} , as with the case of the reference example 1.

[0407] Then, each of the optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiners 241b_n(n=1, 2, 3, 4) determines the target n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{xcmd_n} and the target n-th wheel slip ratio S_{cmd_n} on the basis of the supplied inputs, and outputs the determined results.

[0408] The following will explain the processing by each of the optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiners 241b_n(n=1, 2, 3, 4) with reference to Fig. 23.

[0409] First, in S200, it is preconditioned that the side slip angle of the n-th wheel W_n (n=1, 2, 3, 4) is an actual side slip angle (more specifically, the actual front wheel side slip angle β_{f_act} if n=1 or 2 and the actual rear wheel side slip angle β_{r_act} if n=3 or 4), and a road surface friction coefficient (the coefficient of friction between the n-th wheel W_n and a road surface) is the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} . Then, based on the precondition, a slip ratio S_{ff_n} associated with the FF total target n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{ftotal_n} is determined. More specifically, based on the

- 209 -

precondition, the value of the slip ratio associated with a driving/braking force that agrees with or is closest to FF_{total_n} in the driving/braking force that can be generated in the n -th wheel W_n is determined as Sff_n . In this case, the slip ratio associated with FF_{total_n} may be determined on the basis of, for example, the map used for the processing in S100 of Fig. 19 in the aforesaid reference example 1, and the determined slip ratio may be determined as Sff_n . If a slip ratio associated with FF_{total_n} has two different values, then the slip ratio that is closer to zero is determined as Sff_n . In other words, in the relationship between the slip ratio and the driving/braking force of the n -th wheel W_n (the relationship based on the aforesaid wheel characteristics relationship), Sff_n is determined within the range between the value of the slip ratio, at which the driving/braking force reaches a peak value (extremal value), and zero. If FF_{total_n} deviates from the range of values of the driving/braking forces that can be generated in the n -th wheel W_n under the aforesaid precondition, then the value of the slip ratio associated with the value of a driving/braking force closest to FF_{total_n} is determined as Sff_n .

[0410] Subsequently, the procedure proceeds to S202

wherein a lateral force $Fyff\_n$ of the n -th wheel W_n when the slip ratio of the n -th wheel W_n is Sff_n is determined. In this case, the lateral force $Fyff\_n$ may be determined

- 210 -

from the value of the actual side slip angle β_{f_act} or β_{r_act} of the n-th wheel W_n , the value of the estimated road surface friction coefficient μ_{estm} , and the value of S_{ff_n} on the basis of, for example, a map which is

5 prepared in advance and which shows the relationship among the side slip angle, the road surface friction coefficient, the slip ratio, and the lateral force of the n-th wheel W_n (the relationship based on the aforesaid wheel characteristics relationship). Incidentally, the map may
10 include an actual ground contact load F_{zact_n} of the n-th wheel W_n as a variable parameter.

[0411] Subsequently, the procedure proceeds to S204 wherein a moment M_{ff_n} in the yaw direction that is generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the
15 actual vehicle 1 due to the resultant vector of FF_{total_n} , which is the driving/braking force of the n-th wheel W_n , and F_{yff_n} , which is the lateral force of the n-th wheel W_n , when the slip ratio is S_{ff_n} is determined. To be more specific, if the n-th wheel W_n is the front wheel W_1
20 or W_2 ($n=1$ or 2), then a position vector (a position vector on a horizontal plane) of the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 observed from the n-th wheel W_n is determined on the basis of the actual front wheel steering angle δ_{f_act} . Then, the outer product
25 (vector product) of the position vector and the aforesaid resultant vector may be calculated so as to determine M_{ff_n} . Further, if the n-th wheel W_n is the rear wheel W_3

- 211 -

or W_4 ($n=3$ or 4), then the outer product (vector product) of the position vector (a position vector on a horizontal plane, which is set in advance) of the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 observed from the n -th wheel W_n and the aforesaid resultant force vector may be calculated so as to determine M_{ff_n} . The M_{ff_n} may alternatively be determined according to a map, which is prepared beforehand, from FF_{total_n} , F_{yff_n} and the actual front wheel steering angle δf_{act} (if $n=1$ or 2) or from FF_{total_n} and F_{yff_n} (if $n=3$ or 4). The M_{ff_n} thus determined corresponds to the feedforward required moment (a required moment when $M_{fbdmd\_n}=0$) of the n -th wheel.

[0412] Subsequently, the procedure proceeds to S206 wherein the M_{ff_n} determined as described above and the FB target brake moment M_{fbdmd_n} are added up thereby to calculate a temporary target moment candidate M_{cand_n} , which is a temporary target value of a moment (a moment in the yaw direction) about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 by a road surface reaction force of the n -th wheel W_n . This M_{cand_n} means a moment in the yaw direction which should be generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 on the basis of a control request in the n -th wheel W_n .

[0413] Subsequently, the procedure proceeds to S208 wherein an n -th wheel slip ratio at the generation of a maximum moment S_{max_n} is determined on a precondition that the side slip angle of the n -th wheel W_n ($n=1, 2, 3,$

- 212 -

4) is an actual side slip angle (more specifically, the actual front wheel side slip angle β_{f_act} if $n=1$ or 2 and the actual rear wheel side slip angle β_{r_act} if $n=3$ or 4), and a road surface friction coefficient (the coefficient of friction between the n -th wheel W_n and a road surface) is the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} . This processing is carried out in the same manner as that for determining the n -th wheel slip ratio at the generation of a maximum moment S_{max_n} in S102 of Fig. 19 in the aforesaid reference example 1. However, S_{max_n} is determined such that the moment (maximum moment) generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 by the resultant force of the driving/braking force and the lateral force produced in the n -th wheel W_n in response thereto reaches a maximum value thereof toward the polarity (direction) of the feedback yaw moment basic required value M_{fbdmd} . The S_{max_n} thus determined means a slip ratio corresponding to the k -th wheel driving/braking force at the generation of a maximum moment.

[0414] Subsequently, the procedure proceeds to S210 wherein the slip ratio S_{cand_n} when a moment in the yaw direction agrees with the M_{cand_n} determined in S206 or becomes closest to M_{cand_n} between the value of S_{max_n} determined as described above and zero is determined.

[0415] The processing in S210 may exploratively determine S_{cand_n} on the basis of, for example, the map which is

- 213 -

prepared in advance and which shows the relationship among the actual side slip angle, the road surface friction coefficient, the slip ratio, the driving/braking force, and the lateral force of the n-th wheel W_n (the relationship based on the wheel characteristics relationship) and the actual front wheel steering angle δf_{act} (if $n=1$ or 2), or according to the map (if $n=3$ or 4) under the aforesaid precondition.

[0416] Subsequently, the target n-th wheel slip ratio

$Scmd\_n$ is determined by the processing in S212 to S216.

In this case, $Scmd\_n$ is determined such that the absolute value of the driving/braking force (the driving/braking force in the braking direction) associated with $Scmd\_n$ does not become smaller than the absolute value of the FF total target n-th wheel driving/braking force $FFtotal\_n$ if both $Scand\_n$ and Sff_n are positive values (in other words, if the driving/braking forces of the n-th wheels W_n associated with $Scand\_n$ and Sff_n , respectively, are both the driving/braking forces in the braking direction).

[0417] To be more specific, it is determined in S212 whether $Scand\_n > Sff\_n > 0$ applies, and if the determination result is YES, then the procedure proceeds to S214 wherein the value of $Scand\_n$ is substituted into $Scmd\_n$. If the determination result in S212 is NO, then the procedure proceeds to S216 wherein the value of Sff_n is substituted into $Scmd\_n$.

[0418] Subsequently, the procedure proceeds to S218

- 214 -

wherein the driving/braking force of the n-th wheel W_n associated with the $Scmd\_n$ determined as described above is determined as a target n-th wheel driving/braking force $Fxcmd\_n$. In this case, $Fxcmd\_n$ associated with the value
5 of the $Scmd\_n$ is determined on the basis of, for example, a map which shows the relationship between slip ratios and driving/braking forces and which is prepared beforehand.

[0419] The above has described the processing by the optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiner
10 242b_n in the present reference example 2.

[0420] Supplementally, the present reference example 2 uses, in place of the condition (3) in the aforesaid reference example 1, a condition that the target n-th wheel driving/braking force $Fxcmd\_n$ takes a value within
15 the range of values of driving/braking forces that can be generated in the n-th wheel W_n according to the aforesaid wheel characteristics relationship (the wheel characteristics relationship that holds on the basis of a precondition that the side slip angle of the n-th wheel W_n
20 is the actual side slip angle β_{f_act} or β_{r_act} and the road surface friction coefficient is the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm}) and a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 by a road surface reaction force that
25 has a driving/braking force component equal to $Fxcmd\_n$ in a road surface reaction force that can be generated in the n-th wheel W_n according to the wheel characteristics

- 215 -

relationship agrees with or is close to the aforesaid
Mcand_n as much as possible (the absolute value of a
difference from Mcand_n is minimized). In addition, among
this condition (hereinafter referred to as condition (3)')
5 and the aforesaid conditions (1) and (2), the aforesaid
condition (1) is defined as the highest-priority condition
and the condition (2) is defined as the next-rank
condition, and then the target n-th wheel driving/braking
force Fxcmd_n is determined such that the conditions (1),
10 (2), and (3)' are satisfied according to the order of
priority. In this case, Fxcmd_n is determined by the
processing up to S210 described above such that condition
(3)' is satisfied as much as possible within a range in
which condition (2) is eventually satisfied. More
15 specifically, if the driving/braking force associated with
Scand_n determined by the processing in S210 (the
driving/braking force associated with Scmd_n obtained when
the determination result in S212 is YES) is determined as
the target n-th wheel driving/braking force Fxcmd_n, then
20 the Fxcmd_n will satisfy conditions (2) and (3)' with
condition (2) being treated as the preferential condition.
Further, Fxcmd_n is determined such that the highest-
priority condition (1) is satisfied by carrying out the
processing in S212 to S216.

25 [0421]

[First Embodiment]

A first embodiment of the present invention will

- 216 -

now be explained with reference to Fig. 24 and Fig. 25.

The present embodiment differs from the aforesaid reference example 1 only partly in processing, so that the explanation will be focused mainly on the different aspect, and the explanation of the same portions will be omitted.

In the explanation of the present embodiment, the same constituent portions or the same functional portions as those of the reference example 1 will be assigned the same reference characters as those in the reference example 1.

[0422] The present embodiment differs from the reference example 1 only in the processing by the optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiner 241a_n (n=1, 2, 3, 4) of the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24 shown in Fig. 18 described above. In this case, according to the present embodiment, although not shown, each optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiner 241a_n receives an estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} and an actual road surface reaction force of the n-th wheel W_n (an actual driving/braking force F_{xact_n} , an actual lateral force F_{yact_n} , and an actual ground contact load F_{zact_n}) in addition to the FF total n-th wheel driving/braking force FF_{total_n} and the unlimited n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{xdmd_n} . Then, each optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiner 241a_n presumes the relationship between the driving/braking force and the lateral force of the n-th wheel W_n on the basis of the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} and the

- 217 -

actual road surface reaction force of the n-th wheel Wn,
 which have been input thereto. Further, by using the
 estimated relationship, a target n-th wheel
 driving/braking force Fxcmd_n and a target n-th wheel slip
 5 ratio Scmd_n are determined.

[0423] The actuator operation target value synthesizer 24
 is a constituent element (a means for determining a
 driving/braking force manipulation control input) of an
 actual vehicle actuator operation control input
 10 determining means in the present invention.

[0424] Here, as indicated by expression (2.42) in the
 aforesaid non-patent document 1, if the actual side slip
 angle of each n-th wheel Wn(n=1, 2, 3, 4) takes a certain
 value, the relationship between a lateral force Fy_n and a
 15 driving/braking force Fx_n applied from a road surface to
 the n-th wheel Wn can be generally approximated by an
 elliptical expression shown below.

[0425] [Mathematical expression 9]

$$\left(\frac{F_{x\_n}}{\mu \cdot F_{z\_n}}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{F_{y\_n}}{F_{y0\_n}}\right)^2 = 1 \quad \text{..... Expression 40}$$

20 [0426] In expression 40, μ denotes a road surface
 friction coefficient, Fz_n denotes a ground contact load
 of an n-th wheel Wn, and Fy0_n denotes a lateral force
 when the driving/braking force Fx_n of the n-th wheel Wn
 25 is zero. Fy0_n generally changes with the side slip angle
 of the n-th wheel Wn. The polarity of Fy0_n is opposite

- 218 -

from the polarity of the actual slip angle of the n-th wheel Wn.

[0427] In the present embodiment, this expression 40 is the expression for defining the relationship between a driving/braking force and a lateral force of the n-th wheel Wn, and this expression 40 is used to determine Fxcmd_n and Scmd_n. In this case, a value of an actual road surface reaction force is used to specify Fy0_n of expression 40.

[0428] Referring to Fig. 24, the following will explain the processing by the optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiner 241a_n(n=1, 2, 3, 4) in the present embodiment. Fig. 24 is a flowchart showing the processing.

[0429] First, in S300, the value of Fy0_n of the above expression 40 (the value of the lateral force when the driving/braking force is zero) is determined on the basis of the actual road surface reaction forces Fxact_n, Fyact_n, and Fzact_n of the n-th wheel Wn (the latest values of detected values or estimated values) and the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} (latest value). More specifically, the values of Fxact_n, Fyact_n, Fzact_n, and μ_{estm} are substituted into Fx_n, Fy_n, Fz_n, and μ , respectively, of expression 40. Then, a solution is effected on Fy0_n (in other words, by the expression shown in the figure) to determine the value of Fy0_n.

Incidentally, $\sqrt{A}$ in the figure (A denoting a general variable) is a function for determining the square root of

- 219 -

A. The polarity (sign) of F_{y0_n} is the same as that of F_{yact_n} .

[0430] Subsequently, the procedure proceeds to S302

wherein the driving/braking force F_{x_n} that is closest to

5 (including the case of agreement with) the aforesaid

unlimited n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{xdmd_n} is

determined, using the expression 40 (expression 40 with

the value of F_{y0_n} being the value determined in S300) as

a restrictive condition (the restrictive condition

10 defining the relationship between F_{x_n} and F_{y_n}), and the

determined F_{x_n} is defined as the n-th wheel

driving/braking force candidate F_{xcand_n} . In this case,

the range of values that the driving/braking force F_{x_n}

may take under the restrictive condition of expression 40

15 is a range between $-\mu \cdot F_{zact\_n}$ and $\mu \cdot F_{zact\_n}$. Incidentally,

$\mu \cdot F_{zact\_n}$ means a maximum frictional force between the n-

th wheel W_n and a road surface. Hence, if the value of

F_{xdmd_n} is a value within the range $[-\mu \cdot F_{zact\_n}, \mu \cdot F_{zact\_n}]$,

then F_{xdmd_n} is directly determined as F_{xcand_n} , and if

20 the value of F_{xdmd_n} deviates from the range $[-\mu \cdot F_{zact\_n},$

$\mu \cdot F_{zact\_n}]$, then the value of either $-\mu \cdot F_{zact\_n}$ or $\mu \cdot F_{zact\_n}$,

whichever is closer to F_{xcmd_n} , is determined as F_{xcand_n} .

[0431] Subsequently, the procedure proceeds to S304

wherein a value of the driving/braking force F_{x_n} at which

25 the moment in the yaw direction generated about the

center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 by a

road surface reaction force of the n-th wheel (the

- 220 -

resultant force of the driving/braking force F_{x_n} and the lateral force F_{y_n}) reaches a maximum level is determined, using the expression 40 (expression 40 when the value of F_{y0_n} is the value determined in S300) as the restrictive condition, and the determined value is defined as the n-th wheel driving/braking force at the generation of a maximum moment $F_{x\max\_n}$. More specifically, of the pairs of F_{x_n} and F_{y_n} conforming to the relationship of the expression 40, the pair of F_{x_n} and F_{y_n} at which the moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 by the resultant force of the pair of F_{x_n} and F_{y_n} reaches the maximum level is determined, and the value of F_{x_n} of the pair is determined as $F_{x\max\_n}$. The maximum moment here is a moment that reaches its maximum level toward the same polarity as that of the feedback yaw moment basic required value $M_{fb\text{dmd}}$. The polarity of a lateral force associated with F_{xcand_n} is the same as the polarity of F_{y0_n} (= the polarity of F_{yact_n}) determined in S300.

[0432] In this case, $F_{x\max\_n}$ ($F_{x\max\_n}$ when $n=1$ or 2) associated with the front wheels $W1$ and $W2$ is calculated from the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} (latest value), the actual ground contact load F_{zact_n} of the n-th wheel Wn and the actual front wheel steering angle δf_{act} . Further, $F_{x\max\_n}$ ($F_{x\max\_n}$ when $n=3$ or 4) associated with the rear wheels $W3$ and $W4$ is calculated from the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} (latest value) and the actual

- 221 -

ground contact load F_{zact_n} of the n -th wheel W_n .

[0433] Here, a method for calculating F_{xmma_1} related to the first wheel W_1 will be representatively explained with reference to Fig. 25. This Fig. 25 schematically shows

5 the actual vehicle 1 in a plan view, an ellipse C_1 in the figure showing the ellipse indicated by the expression 40. A point on the ellipse C_1 associated with the pair of F_{x_1} and F_{y_1} that causes the moment generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 to reach
10 the maximum level is a point of contact P_s between a straight line u_m in contact with the ellipse C_1 and the ellipse C_1 on the straight line in parallel to a straight line u_0 connecting the central point of the first wheel W_1 and the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1
15 on a horizontal plane. In this example, it is assumed that F_{xcand_1} takes a negative (in the braking direction) driving/braking force, and F_{x_1} at the point of contact P_s also takes a negative value.

[0434] Here, if an angle formed by the straight line u_m
20 (or u_0) with respect to the longitudinal direction of the first wheel W_1 is denoted by θ as shown in the figure, then a change rate of F_{y_1} relative to F_{x_1} , $\partial F_{y\_1} / \partial F_{x\_1}$, at the point of contact P_s is equal to $\tan\theta$ as indicated by expression 41 given below. Further, $\tan\theta$ is determined
25 from the actual front wheel steering angle δf_{act} by the geometric computation of expression 42 given below.

[0435]

- 222 -

$$\partial Fy\_1 / \partial Fx\_1 = \tan\theta \quad \text{..... Expression 41}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \tan\theta = & (-Lf \cdot \sin\delta f\_act \\ & + (df/2) \cdot \cos\delta f\_act) / (Lf \cdot \cos\delta f\_act \\ & + (df/2) \cdot \sin\delta f\_act) \quad \text{..... Expression 42} \end{aligned}$$

The meanings of df and Lf of expression 42 are the same as those in Fig. 13 mentioned above.

[0436] Meanwhile, expression 43 given below is derived from the expression 40.

[0437]

$$\partial Fy\_1 / \partial Fx\_1 = - (Fy0\_1 / (\mu_{estm} \cdot Fzact\_1))^2 \cdot (Fx\_1 / Fy\_1) \quad \text{..... Expression 43}$$

From the expressions 41 and 43 and the expression 40, the value of Fx_1 at the point of contact Ps, i.e., Fxmmax_1, is given by expression 44 given below.

[0438]

$$Fxmmax\_1 = \mu_{estm} \cdot Fzact\_1 / \sqrt{1 + Fy0\_1^2 / (\tan\theta \cdot \mu_{estm} \cdot Fzact\_1)^2} \quad \text{..... Expression 44}$$

The expression 44 and the expression 42 are the expressions for determining Fxmmax_1. If Fxcand_1 is a positive value, then Fxmmax_1 will be a value obtained by reversing the sign of the computation result of the right side of expression 44.

[0439] On the remaining wheels W2 to W4, Fxmmax_n (n=1, 2,

3) can be calculated in the same manner as that described above. Regarding the rear wheels W3 and W4, the actual steering angle is zero, so that the values thereof are unnecessary.

5 [0440] Returning to the explanation of the flowchart of Fig. 24, from S306 to S314, the same processing as the processing from S104 to S112 of Fig. 19 in the aforesaid first embodiment is carried out, thereby determining the target n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{xcmd_n} .

10 [0441] Subsequently, the procedure proceeds to S316 wherein a slip ratio associated with F_{xcmd_n} is determined, and it is determined as the target n-th wheel slip ratio $Scmd\_n$. In this case, the target n-th wheel slip ratio $Scmd\_n$ is determined on the basis of, for example, a
15 map which shows the relationship between the driving/braking forces and slip ratios of the n-th wheel W_n and which is established in advance. The map used here is a map corresponding to a set of μ_{estm} and the actual side slip angle β_{f_act} or β_{r_act} (or F_{y0_n}) of the n-th
20 wheel W_n .

[0442] Supplementally, in the present embodiment, when the n-th wheel W_n is regarded as a k-th wheel in the present invention, the target n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{xcmd_n} determined as described above corresponds to
25 the driving/braking force manipulation control input in the present invention. In the present embodiment, each of the wheels W1 to W4 is defined as the k-th wheel (a

- 224 -

specific wheel) in the present invention.

[0443] The elliptic function of the aforesaid expression 40 is specified by determining Fy_0 by the processing in S300, so that the processing in S300 corresponds to the means for determining the k-th elliptic function in the present invention. Further, determining the target n-th wheel driving/braking force $Fxcmd_n$ as described above determines $Fxcmd_n$ such that the conditions (1), (2), and (3) explained in the aforesaid reference example 1 are satisfied (more specifically, such that one of the conditions (1) to (3) is satisfied, condition (1) being defined as the priority condition of the highest rank and condition (2) being defined as the priority condition of the next rank). In this case, $Fxcand_n$ takes a value of driving/braking force closest to (including the case of agreement with) the unlimited target n-th wheel driving/braking force $Fxdmd_n$ within the range of values of driving/braking forces that can be generated in the n-th wheel Wn under the restrictive condition indicated by the aforesaid expression (40), as described above. In other words, therefore, condition (3) is equivalent to a condition that the target n-th driving/braking force $Fxcmd_n$ takes a value within the range of the values of the driving/braking forces that can be generated in the n-th wheel Wn according to the elliptic function of the aforesaid expression (40) and agrees with or is close to (meaning that the absolute value of a difference from

- 225 -

Fxdmd_n is minimized) the unlimited target n-th driving/braking force Fxdmd_n (the driving/braking force based on control requirements) as much as possible. Hence, conditions (1) to (3) correspond to the third required condition, the second required condition, and the first required condition, respectively in the present invention. In this case, the n-th wheel driving/braking force Fxmmax_n at the generation of a maximum moment corresponds to the k-th wheel driving/braking force at the generation of a maximum moment in the present invention.

[0444] Further, the target values determined by the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24 in the present embodiment correspond to actual actuator operation control inputs in the present invention.

[0445] In the present embodiment, if the n-th wheel Wn is regarded as the k-th wheel in the present invention, then the target n-th wheel driving/braking force Fxcmd_n determined as described above corresponds to a driving/braking force manipulation control input in the present invention.

[0446]

[Second Embodiment]

A second embodiment of the present invention will now be explained with reference to Fig. 26. The present embodiment differs from the aforesaid reference example 2 only partly in processing, so that the explanation will be focused mainly on the different aspect, and the

- 226 -

explanation of the same portions will be omitted. In the explanation of the present embodiment, the same constituent portions or the same functional portions as those of the reference example 2 will be assigned the same reference characters as those in the reference example 2.

[0447] The present embodiment differs from the reference example 2 only in the processing by the optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiner 241b_n (n=1, 2, 3, 4) of the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24 shown in Fig. 22 described above. In this case, according to the present embodiment, although not shown, each optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiner 241b_n receives an estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} and an actual road surface reaction force of the n-th wheel W_n (an actual driving/braking force F_{xact_n}, an actual lateral force F_{yact_n}, and an actual ground contact load F_{zact_n}) in addition to the FF total n-th wheel driving/braking force FF_{total_n} and the unlimited n-th wheel driving/braking force F_{xdmd_n}. Then, each optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiner 241b_n presumes the relationship between the driving/braking force and the lateral force of the n-th wheel W_n represented by the expression 40 on the basis of the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} and the actual road surface reaction force of the n-th wheel W_n, which have been input thereto. Further, by using the presumed relationship, a target n-th wheel driving/braking force

- 227 -

Fxcmd_n and a target n-th wheel slip ratio Scmd_n are determined.

[0448] Fig. 26 is a flowchart showing the processing by each optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiner 241b_n in the present embodiment. The following will give an explanation thereof. First, in S400, the same processing as that in S300 of Fig. 24 described above is carried out to determine the value of Fy0_n of expression 40.

[0449] Subsequently, the procedure proceeds to S402 wherein a lateral force Fyff_n associated with the FF total target n-th wheel driving/braking force FFtotal_n is determined. More specifically, the values of FFtotal_n, Fzact_n, and μ_{estm} are substituted into Fx_n, Fz_n, and μ , respectively, of the expression 40, and the value determined in S400 is substituted into Fy0_n of expression 40 (in other words, by the expression shown in the figure) to effect a solution on Fy_n, thereby determining the value of Fyff_n.

[0450] Subsequently, the procedure proceeds to S404 wherein the moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 by the resultant force of a driving/braking force FFtotal_n and a lateral force Fyff_n of the n-th wheel W_n is determined, and the determined moment is defined as the n-th wheel FF moment Mff_n. This processing is carried out in the same manner as the processing in S204 of Fig. 24

- 228 -

described above.

[0451] Subsequently, the procedure proceeds to S406 wherein the M_{ff_n} determined as described above and the FB target brake moment M_{fbdmd_n} are added up thereby to
5 calculate a temporary target moment candidate M_{cand_n} , which is a temporary target value of a moment (a moment in the yaw direction) about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 by a road surface reaction force of the n-th wheel W_n .

10 [0452] Subsequently, the procedure proceeds to S408 wherein a driving/braking force F_{x_n} of a road surface reaction force that causes a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 by a road surface reaction force (the
15 resultant force of the driving/braking force F_{x_n} and the lateral force F_{y_n}) of the n-th wheel W_n to become maximum toward the same polarity as the polarity of the feedback yaw moment basic required value M_{fbdmd} is determined, using the expression 40 as the restrictive condition, and
20 the determined driving/braking force F_{x_n} is defined as an n-th wheel driving/braking force at the generation of a maximum moment F_{xmmax_n} . This processing is the same as the processing in S304 of Fig. 24 described above.

[0453] Subsequently, the procedure proceeds to S410
25 wherein F_{x_n} at which the moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 by a road surface reaction force of the

- 229 -

n-th wheel W_n (the resultant force of the driving/braking force F_{x_n} and the lateral force F_{y_n}) agrees with or becomes closest to M_{cand_n} is determined, using the expression 40 as the restrictive condition, and the
5 determined F_{x_n} is defined as a candidate of the driving/braking force of the n-th wheel W_n F_{xcand_n} (the n-th wheel driving/braking force candidate F_{xcand_n}). The F_{xcand_n} is determined, however, such that neither $0 > F_{xmax\_n} > F_{xcand\_n}$ nor $0 < F_{xmax\_n} < F_{xcand\_n}$ takes place
10 (in other words, such that the sign of F_{xcand_n} is different from the sign of F_{xmax_n} or the absolute value of F_{xcand_n} is not more than the absolute value of F_{xmax_n}).

[0454] In this case, if the absolute value of M_{cand_n} is
15 the absolute value or more of a maximum moment associated with F_{xmax_n} , then F_{xmax_n} is determined as F_{xcand_n} .

[0455] Further, if the absolute value of M_{cand_n} is smaller than the absolute value of the maximum moment associated with F_{xmax_n} , then, from among the pairs of
20 F_{x_n} and F_{y_n} that satisfy the relationship of expression 40, a pair of F_{x_n} and F_{y_n} which causes a moment in the yaw direction to be generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 by the resultant force thereof to agree with M_{cand_n} is exploratively determined.
25 Incidentally, for the front wheels W_1 and W_2 , this processing uses not only expression 40 but also the value of the actual front wheel steering angle δf_{act} .

- 230 -

[0456] In this case, there are two pairs of Fx_n and Fy_n that cause the moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 by the resultant force of Fx_n and Fy_n to agree with M_{cand_n} .

5 If $Fx_{mmax\_n} < 0$, then the Fx_n which is expressed as $Fx_n > Fx_{mmax\_n}$ is determined as Fx_{cand_n} , and if $Fx_{mmax\_n} > 0$, then the Fx_n which is expressed as $Fx_n < Fx_{mmax\_n}$ is determined as F_{cand_n} .

10 [0457] By such processing in S410, Fx_{cand_n} is determined such that the moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of the actual vehicle 1 agrees with or becomes closest to M_{cand_n} , while preventing $0 > Fx_{mmax\_n} > Fx_{cand\_n}$ or $0 < Fx_{mmax\_n} < Fx_{cand\_n}$ from taking place, within a range in which expression 40 is satisfied.

15 [0458] Subsequently, the procedure proceeds to S412 wherein it is determined whether $0 > FF_{total\_n} > Fx_{cand\_n}$ applies. If the determination result is YES, then the procedure proceeds to S414 wherein the value of Fx_{cand_n} is substituted into Fx_{cmd_n} . If the determination result in S412 is NO, then the procedure proceeds to S416 wherein the value of FF_{total_n} is substituted into Fx_{cmd_n} . Thus, the target n-th wheel driving/braking force Fx_{cmd} is determined.

25 [0459] Subsequently, the procedure proceeds to S418 wherein a slip ratio associated with Fx_{cmd_n} is determined as a target n-th wheel slip ratio $Scmd\_n$. This processing is the same as the processing in S316 of Fig. 24.

[0460] The above has explained in detail the processing by the optimum target n-th driving/braking force determiner 241b_n in the present embodiment.

[0461] Supplementally, in the present embodiment, as explained in relation to the aforesaid reference example 2, the FB target n-th wheel brake moment M_{fbdmd_n} ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) determined by the actuator operation FB target value determiner 20b of the FB distribution law 20 corresponds to a feedback control input in the present invention. In other words, M_{fbdmd_n} has a meaning as a target value of a moment in the yaw direction generated thereby about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 due to the manipulation of the driving/braking force of the wheel W_n .

[0462] Supplementally, the present embodiment uses, in place of condition (3) in the aforesaid first embodiment, the same condition as condition (3)' explained in relation to the aforesaid reference example 2. In this case, however, the wheel characteristics relationship in the aforesaid reference example 2 corresponds to the elliptic function of the expression 40. Therefore, condition (3)' in the present embodiment is, more precisely, a condition that a value within the range of values of driving/braking forces that can be generated in the n-th wheel W_n according to the expression 40 is obtained, and a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 by a road

- 232 -

surface reaction force that has a driving/braking force component equal to F_{xcmd_n} in the road surface reaction force that can be generated in the n -th wheel W_n according to the wheel characteristics relationship agrees with or
5 is close to the aforesaid M_{cand_n} as much as possible (the absolute value of a difference from M_{cand_n} is minimized). In addition, among this condition (3)' and the conditions (1) and (2), the condition (1) is defined as the highest-priority condition and condition (2) is defined as the
10 next-rank condition, and then the target n -th wheel driving/braking force F_{xcmd_n} is determined such that these conditions (1), (2), and (3)' are satisfied according to the order of priority. In this case, F_{xcmd_n} is determined by the processing up to S410 described above
15 such that condition (3)' is satisfied as much as possible within a range in which condition (2) can be eventually satisfied. Further, F_{xcmd_n} is determined such that the highest-priority condition (1) is satisfied by carrying out the processing in S412 to S416.

20 [0463]

[Third Embodiment]

A third embodiment of the present invention will now be explained with reference to Fig. 27. The present embodiment differs from the first embodiment or the second
25 embodiment described above only partly in processing, so that the explanation will be focused mainly on the different aspect, and the explanation of the same portions

- 233 -

will be omitted. In the explanation of the present embodiment, the same constituent portions or the same functional portions as those of the first embodiment or the second embodiment will be assigned the same reference characters as those in the first embodiment or the second embodiment.

[0464] Essentially, an actuator operation FB target value is ideally determined, from the aspect of a feedback control theory, such that a feedback yaw moment basic required value M_{fbdmd} based on state amount errors y_{err} and β_{err} is satisfied. However, according to the first embodiment or the second embodiment described above, a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 based on an actuator operation FB target value incurs excess or deficiency relative to M_{fbdmd} due to the processing by a dead-zone processor 221, a limiter 222d_n or the like. Further, there are cases where a road surface reaction force produced in the wheels W1 to W4 of the actual vehicle 1 on the basis of an actuator operation FB target value incurs an excess or deficiency relative to the actuator operation FB target value due to an influence of nonlinearity (a limiter or a saturation characteristic or the like) in each processing functional section (e.g., an actuator operation target value synthesizer 24) from the actuator operation FB target value to an actuator operation target value. Hence, the road surface reaction

- 234 -

force produced in the wheels W1 to W4 of the actual vehicle 1 may develop an excess or deficiency relative to an ideal road surface reaction force for bringing the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} close to zero.

5 [0465] Meanwhile, regarding an influence of a difference between the state amount of a motion of the actual vehicle 1 and the state amount of a motion of a model vehicle, feeding back the difference to an actuator device 3 of the actual vehicle 1 to apply an additional road surface
10 reaction force (a road surface reaction force for bringing the difference close to zero) to the actual vehicle 1 is equivalent to applying an external force, which is obtained by multiplying the additional road surface reaction force by (-1), to the model vehicle.

15 [0466] Hence, according to the present embodiment, a virtual external force to be applied to the model vehicle is corrected on the basis of an excess or deficiency of a road surface reaction force produced in each of the wheels W1 to W4 of the actual vehicle 1 relative to an ideal road
20 surface reaction force, thereby compensating for the excess or deficiency.

[0467] The following will present an explanation with reference to Fig. 27. According to the present embodiment, a virtual external force determiner 20a of an FB
25 distribution law 20 is equipped with a processor 215 in addition to the functions in the first embodiment or the second embodiment described above.

- 235 -

[0468] The processor 215 first inputs an actuator operation FB target value (current time value) determined as described above by an actuator operation FB target value determiner 20b into a processor 215a. Then, the processor 215a calculates a road surface reaction force correction amount, which is a correction amount of a road surface reaction force acting on each of the wheels W1 to W4 of the actual vehicle 1 on the basis of the actuator operation FB target value (a correction amount from a road surface reaction force generated on the basis of an actuator operation FF target value). In this case, the road surface reaction force correction amount is determined as described below.

[0469] A road surface reaction force (a driving/braking force and a lateral force) acting on an n-th wheel Wn is estimated from a target n-th wheel driving/braking force $F_{xcmd\_n}(n=1, 2, 3, 4)$ and a target slip ratio $S_{xcmd\_n}(n=1, 2, 3, 4)$ determined by an actuator operation target value synthesizer 24 on the basis of an actuator operation FB target value (current time value) and an actuator operation FF target value (current time value). At this time, the estimated value of the driving/braking force of the n-th wheel Wn may be denoted by F_{xcmd_n} and the lateral force may be determined using, for example, a map or the like based on the aforesaid wheel characteristics relationship. To be more specific, the lateral force may be determined using, for example, the aforesaid S200 and

- 236 -

S202 or expression 40. Further, the actuator operation FB target value is set to zero and the same processing as that by the actuator operation target value synthesizer 24 is carried out thereby to determine the target

5 driving/braking force and a target slip ratio of the n-th wheel W_n ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) when the actuator operation FB target value is set to zero, and then a road surface reaction force (a driving/braking force and a lateral force) acting on the n-th wheel W_n is estimated on the
10 basis thereof. Then, the difference in the road surface reaction force of the n-th wheel W_n is determined with the actuator operation FB target value being different as described above, and the difference is determined as the road surface reaction force correction amount of the n-th
15 wheel W_n .

[0470] Subsequently, the road surface reaction force correction amount determined as described above is supplied to a processor 215b. Then, the processor 215b calculates a total moment M_{fb} (a moment in the yaw
20 direction) generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 due to the road surface reaction force correction amount (the resultant force of a driving/braking force component and a lateral force component of the road surface reaction force correction
25 amount) of each of the wheels W_1 to W_4 . To be specific, a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1 by the road

- 237 -

surface reaction force correction amount of the n-th wheel W_n is determined on the basis of primarily the road surface reaction force correction amount of each n-th wheel W_n ($n=1, 2, 3, 4$) and the actual front wheel steering angle δf_{act} (the parameters that define the geometric relationship between each of the wheels $W1$ to $W4$ and the center-of-gravity point of the actual vehicle 1). Then, the moments are synthesized on all the wheels $W1$ to $W4$ thereby to determine Mfb .

[0471] Subsequently, the feedback yaw moment basic required value $Mfbdmd$ (current time value) determined by a processor 220 of the actuator operation FB target value determiner 20b is subtracted from the moment Mfb by a subtracter 215c to determine an actual vehicle yaw moment error $Mfb\_err (=Mfb-Mfbdmd)$. Incidentally, this actual vehicle yaw moment error Mfb_err means the excess or deficiency of the moment in the yaw direction, which is generated in the actual vehicle 1 due to the actuator operation FB target value, from $Mfbdmd$.

[0472] Subsequently, the actual vehicle yaw moment error Mfb_err is multiplied by a predetermined gain Cfb by a multiplier 215d to determine a virtual external force compensating moment $Mvir\_c$. The gain Cfb takes a value of $0 < Cfb \leq 1$ (a positive value of 1 or less). The virtual external force compensating moment $Mvir\_c$ means a moment in the yaw direction that should be generated about a center-of-gravity point Gd of the model vehicle to bring a

- 238 -

state amount error between the actual vehicle 1 and the model vehicle close to zero, the state amount error occurring due to an excess or deficiency of the moment in the yaw direction, which is generated in the actual vehicle 1 due to an actuator operation FB target value, from Mfbdmd.

[0473] Subsequently, the virtual external force determined as described above by the $\gamma\beta$ limiter 202 (the output of the subtractor 207) is defined as second temporary values $M_{vir}' (=M_{virtmp}-M_{vir\_over})$ and $F_{vir}' (=F_{virtmp}-F_{vir\_over})$, and the second temporary values M_{vir}' , F_{vir}' and the virtual external force compensating moment M_{vir_c} are added up by an adder 215e. This determines the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} (current time values). To be more specific, the sum of the second temporary values M_{vir}' and M_{vir_c} is determined as M_{vir} , while the second temporary value F_{vir}' is directly determined as F_{vir} without processing it.

[0474] The construction and processing other than those explained above are the same as those in the first embodiment or the second embodiment described above.

[0475] According to the present embodiment, the influences of the nonlinearity from the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} to an actuator operation target value exerted on the behaviors of β_{err} and γ_{err} are reduced, allowing the γ_{err} and β_{err} to converge to zero while maintaining high linearity. In other words, the total sum

- 239 -

of the feedback gains for converging the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} to zero approximates a difference between the gain matrix K_{fbdm} in the expression 23 and the gain matrix K_{fvir} in expression 15 ($K_{fbdm} - K_{fvir}$).

5 [0476] In other words, the relationship between the difference between the external force acting on the model vehicle when the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} obtained by correcting the second temporary values M_{vir}' and F_{vir}' by the virtual external force compensating
10 moment M_{vir_c} are input to a reference dynamic characteristics model 16 (a moment in the yaw direction) and an external force acting on the actual vehicle 1 caused by the actuator operation FB target value (a moment M_{fb} in the yaw direction), and the state amount errors
15 γ_{err} and β_{err} will be a relationship having higher linearity than the relationship between the difference between the external force acting on the model vehicle when the second temporary values M_{vir}' and F_{vir}' of a virtual external force are directly input as the virtual
20 external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} into the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 (a moment in the yaw direction) and an external force acting on the actual vehicle 1 caused by the actuator operation FB target value (a moment M_{fb} in the yaw direction), and the state amount errors
25 γ_{err} and β_{err} .

[0477]

The following will explain some modifications of

the first to the third embodiments described above.

[Modification 1]

In the first to the third embodiments described above, the reference yaw rate γ_d and the reference vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β_d have been used as the reference state amounts; alternatively, however, the following may be applied. For example, only the reference yaw rate γ_d may be sequentially determined as a reference state amount by a reference dynamic characteristics model. Then, the reference dynamic characteristics model and the actuator devices 3 of the actual vehicle 1 may be manipulated to approximate the state amount error γ_{err} , which is a difference between the actual yaw rate γ_{act} and the reference yaw rate γ_d thereof, to zero. In this case, in place of the reference dynamic characteristics model 16 represented by the aforesaid expression 01, a reference dynamic characteristics model 56 shown in Fig. 28, for example, may be used to sequentially determine the reference yaw rate γ_d .

[0478] The following will explain in detail the reference dynamic characteristics model 56 in Fig. 28. The reference dynamic characteristics model 56 sequentially receives, at each control processing cycle, a steering angle θ_h , an actual traveling velocity V_{act} , and a virtual external force moment (a moment in the yaw direction) M_{vir} as a control input for manipulating the reference dynamic characteristics model 56 (a control input for

approximating γ_{err} to zero). Incidentally, θ_h and V_{act} take latest values (current time values) and M_{vir} takes a last time value.

[0479] Then, the reference dynamic characteristics model 56 first determines a stabilization target yaw rate γ_{∞} from the input θ_h and V_{act} according to a stabilization target value determining map 56a. The stabilization target yaw rate γ_{∞} means a convergence value of a yaw rate of a model vehicle (a vehicle on the reference dynamic characteristics model 56 in the present embodiment) when the θ_h and V_{act} are steadily maintained at their input values. Incidentally, the stabilization target value determining map 56a is desirably set beforehand on the basis of the estimated friction coefficient μ_{estm} .

[0480] Subsequently, the last time value of the reference yaw rate γ_d (the value determined at the last time control processing cycle from the reference dynamic characteristics model 56) and the stabilization target yaw rate γ_{∞} are input to a flywheel follow-up law 56b. Then, a flywheel FB moment M_{fb} is determined by the flywheel follow-up law 56b. Here, according to the present embodiment, a rotational motion of the model vehicle in the yaw direction thereof is expressed in terms of a rotational motion of a horizontal flywheel (a flywheel whose rotational axis is an axis in the vertical direction). Then, the rotational angular velocity of the flywheel is output as a reference yaw rate γ_d .

- 242 -

[0481] Then, the flywheel follow-up law 56b determines the flywheel FB moment M_{fb} as a moment to be input to the flywheel (a control input of the dimension of an external force to be input to the flywheel) according to a feedback control law (e.g., a proportional law or a proportional-derivative law) such that the rotational angular velocity of the flywheel, that is, the reference yaw rate γ_d , is converged to the stabilization target yaw rate γ_∞ .

[0482] Subsequently, the reference dynamic

characteristics model 56 adds the virtual external force moment M_{vir} to the M_{fb} by an adder 56c to determine an input (moment) to the flywheel. Then, the input moment is divided by an inertial moment J of the flywheel in a processor 56d thereby to determine a rotational angular acceleration of the flywheel. Further, a value obtained by integrating the rotational angular acceleration (the integration is expressed by an operator "1/s" in the figure) is output as a reference yaw rate γ_d .

[0483] The value of the inertial moment J of the flywheel may be set to a value which is the same or substantially the same as, for example, the value of an inertial moment about the center-of-gravity point G of the actual vehicle 1. Alternatively, a value identified while the actual vehicle 1 is traveling may be used.

[0484] The above has explained the details of the processing by the reference dynamic characteristics model 56.

- 243 -

[0485] Supplementally, the processing other than that by the reference dynamic characteristics model 56 in this modification 1 may be the same as, for example, the first embodiment or the second embodiment (or the reference example 1) described above. However, in the processing by the virtual external force determiner 20a of the first embodiment or the second embodiment described above, M_{vir} is determined by setting, for example, β_{err} , β_{da} , and β_{over} to zero, and the M_{vir} is fed back to the reference dynamic characteristics model 56. In this case, regarding γ_{da} , the value of a yaw rate of the vehicle on the reference dynamic characteristics model 56 after predetermined time may be predicted from, for example, the current time values of V_{act} and θ_h and a temporary value M_{virtmp} of M_{vir} based on γ_{err} , and the predicted value may be used as γ_{da} . Alternatively, for example, the current time value of γ_{act} or the linearly coupled value of γ_{act} and γ_d may be used as γ_{da} . Further, in the processing by an actuator operation FB target value determiner 20b, the processing explained in the aforesaid reference example 1 is carried out, with β_{err} being set to zero. In this modification 1, the processing by the reference manipulated variable determiner 14 is unnecessary. The rest may be the same as the processing explained in the first embodiment or the second embodiment (or the reference example 1) described above.

[0486]

- 244 -

[Modification 2]

In the first to the third embodiments described above, the vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β and the yaw rate γ have been used as the basal state amount related to the translational motion in the lateral direction of the vehicle (the actual vehicle 1 and the model vehicle) and the basal state amount related to a rotational motion (as the first state amounts in the present invention); alternatively, however, other state amounts may be used. More specifically, the description of a vehicle motion may be transformed from a system based on β and γ into a system based on a set of other state amounts by an appropriate transformation matrix.

[0487] For example, a vehicle side slip velocity V_y , which is the side slip velocity (a lateral component of the traveling velocity V_{act}) of the center-of-gravity point of the vehicle, may be used in place of a vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β . Supplementally, if a change in the traveling velocity V_{act} of the vehicle is slow as compared with the vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β or the yaw rate γ and the traveling velocity V_{act} can be regarded as being constant, then β and $d\beta/dt$ (a temporal differential value of β) can be converted into V_y and dV_y/dt (a temporal differential value of V_y), respectively, according to the following expressions 50a and 50b.

[0488]

- 245 -

$$V_y = V_{act} \cdot \beta \quad \text{..... Expression 50a}$$

$$dV_y/dt = V_{act} \cdot d\beta/dt \quad \text{..... Expression 50b}$$

Further, for example, a vehicle side slip
 5 acceleration α_y , which is a side slip acceleration of the
 center-of-gravity point of the vehicle (a temporal change
 rate of V_y) and the yaw rate γ may be used as the basal
 state amounts.

[0489] Supplementally, the vehicle side slip acceleration
 10 α_y denotes the temporal differential value of the vehicle
 side slip velocity $V_y = V_{act} \cdot \beta$. In other words, the
 following expression 51 holds.

[0490]

$$\alpha_y = d(V_{act} \cdot \beta)/dt = dV_{act}/dt \cdot \beta + V_{act} \cdot d\beta/dt \quad \text{..... Expression}$$

15 51

Further, if a change in the traveling velocity
 V_{act} of the vehicle is slow as compared with the side slip
 angle β or the yaw rate γ , and V_{act} can be regarded as
 20 being constant (if it can be regarded as $dV_{act}/dt \approx 0$), then
 the following expression 52 approximately holds on the
 basis of the aforesaid expression 01 and expression 51.

[0491]

$$\alpha_y = V_{act} \cdot d\beta/dt = a_{11} \cdot V_{act} \cdot \beta + a_{12} \cdot V_{act} \cdot \gamma \quad \text{..... Expression 52}$$

25

Hence, a system using β and γ as its bases is
 transformed into a system using α_y and γ as its bases

- 246 -

according to a transformation expression indicated by the following expression 53.

[0492] [Mathematical expression 10]

$$\begin{bmatrix} \alpha y \\ \gamma \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} \cdot V_{act} & a_{12} \cdot V_{act} \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \beta \\ \gamma \end{bmatrix} \dots\dots \text{Expression 53}$$

5

[0493] As described above, the description of a vehicle motion can be transformed from a system using β and γ as its bases into a system using V_y and γ as its bases, a system using αy and γ as its bases, or the like by an appropriate matrix. And, when the bases of vehicle motions are transformed as described above, the element values of a matrix related to a state amount (a yaw rate and a vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle) explained in the aforesaid reference example 1 will be different from those in the embodiments, but for the rest, "the vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle" in each of the aforesaid embodiments (or the reference example 1) may be reread to "the vehicle side slip velocity V_y " or "the vehicle side slip acceleration."

Thus, an embodiment that uses a pair of V_y and γ or a pair of αy and γ as a state amount can be constructed in the same manner as that of the aforesaid first to third embodiments.

[0494] In place of the vehicle side slip acceleration αy , a lateral acceleration $\alpha y'$ ($=\alpha y + V_{act} \cdot \gamma$) obtained by adding a centripetal acceleration of the vehicle ($=V_{act} \cdot \gamma$) to the

25

- 247 -

vehicle side slip acceleration α_y may be used.

[0495] Further, a side slip angle, a side slip velocity, a side slip acceleration or a lateral acceleration of the vehicle at a position other than the center-of-gravity point (e.g., a position on a rear wheel) may be used in place of the side slip angle β or the side slip velocity V_y at the center-of-gravity point of the vehicle. In this case also, the description of a vehicle motion can be transformed from a system using the vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β and the yaw rate γ as its bases into a system using the side slip angle or a side slip velocity, a side slip acceleration or a lateral acceleration of the vehicle at a position other than the center-of-gravity point of the vehicle, and the yaw rate γ as its bases by an appropriate matrix.

[0496] Further, for a restriction object amount in the FB distribution law 20, a predicted value or a current time value (a latest value) or a filtered value of a side slip velocity or a side slip acceleration or a lateral acceleration of the center-of-gravity point may be used in place of the vehicle center-of-gravity point side slip angle β of the actual vehicle 1 or the model vehicle. Further, a predicted value or a current time value (a latest value) or a filtered value of a side slip angle or a side slip velocity, a side slip acceleration or a lateral acceleration of the vehicle at a position other than the center-of-gravity point of the vehicle may be

- 248 -

used as a restriction object amount.

[0497]

[Modification 3]

In the first to the third embodiments described
5 above, the virtual external forces M_{vir} and F_{vir} have been
used as the control inputs for manipulating the model for
bringing the state amount errors γ_{err} and β_{err} close to
zero; however, the control inputs for manipulating the
vehicle model are not limited to virtual external forces.
10 For example, all wheels of the model vehicle may be
steering control wheels regardless of whether the actual
vehicle 1 is equipped with a steering device that permits
steering of all the wheels $W1$ to $W4$. And, the steering
angles of the steering control wheels of the model vehicle
15 and the driving/braking forces of the wheels of the model
vehicle may be manipulated such that a compensation amount
(a correction required amount) of a road surface reaction
force corresponding to a virtual external force is
produced in the model vehicle (so as to eventually
20 approximate state amount errors to zero). In this case,
if the reference dynamic characteristics model is a linear
system (a system that exhibits no saturation
characteristics in road surface reaction force on the
reference dynamic characteristics model), then an
25 advantage equivalent to that obtained by imparting a
virtual external force to a model vehicle can be provided
by manipulating the steering angles of the steering

DEMANDES OU BREVETS VOLUMINEUX

**LA PRÉSENTE PARTIE DE CETTE DEMANDE OU CE BREVETS
COMPREND PLUS D'UN TOME.**

CECI EST LE TOME __1__ DE __2__

NOTE: Pour les tomes additionels, veuillez contacter le Bureau Canadien des Brevets.

JUMBO APPLICATIONS / PATENTS

**THIS SECTION OF THE APPLICATION / PATENT CONTAINS MORE
THAN ONE VOLUME.**

THIS IS VOLUME __1__ OF __2__

NOTE: For additional volumes please contact the Canadian Patent Office.

CLAIMS

[1] A controller of a vehicle equipped with a drive manipulated variable detecting means which detects a drive manipulated variable that indicates a drive manipulation state of the vehicle driven by a driver of the vehicle having a plurality of wheels, an actuator device provided in the vehicle so as to permit the manipulation of at least the driving/braking force of each wheel of the vehicle, and an actuator device control means which sequentially controls an operation of the actuator device, the controller of a vehicle comprising:

an actual state amount grasping means which detects or estimates a first actual state amount, which is the value of a predetermined first state amount related to a predetermined motion including at least a rotational motion in a yaw direction of an actual vehicle;

an actual road surface reaction force grasping means which detects or estimates a road surface reaction force acting from a road surface onto each wheel of the actual vehicle;

a friction characteristic estimating means which estimates the characteristic of friction between a wheel of the actual vehicle and the road surface;

a reference manipulated variable determining means which determines a first reference state amount, which is the reference value of the first state amount, based on at least the detected drive manipulated variable,

- 261 -

a state amount error calculating means which calculates a first state amount error, which is a difference between the detected or estimated first actual state amount and the determined first reference state amount; and

an actual vehicle actuator operation control input determining means which determines an actual vehicle actuator operation control input, which is a control input for operating the actuator device and which includes a driving/braking force manipulation control input defining a target driving/braking force of each wheel of the actual vehicle, on the basis of at least the detected drive manipulated variable and the calculated first state amount error,

wherein the actuator device control means is a means which controls the operation of the actuator device on the basis of the determined actual vehicle actuator operation control input, and

the actual vehicle actuator operation control input determining means comprises:

a means which determines a feedback control input for manipulating the driving/braking force of each wheel for bringing the first state amount error close to zero on the basis of at least the calculated first state amount error;

a means which determines a feedforward control input defining a feedforward target value of the driving/braking

force of each wheel on the basis of at least the detected drive operation input; and

5 a means which determines, on a k-th wheel, which is one or more specific wheels of the plurality of wheels, a k-th elliptic function which is an elliptic function defining a correlation between a driving/braking force component and a lateral force component of a road surface reaction force which may act on the k-th wheel from a road surface on the basis of the detected or estimated road surface reaction force of the k-th wheel and the estimated
10 friction characteristic; and

a means which determines a driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel such that a predetermined first required condition related to a
15 relationship among at least a road surface reaction force that may act on the k-th wheel according to the determined k-th elliptic function, the feedforward control input of the k-th wheel, the feedback control input of the k-th wheel, and the driving/braking force manipulation control
20 input of the k-th wheel is satisfied.

[2] A controller of a vehicle equipped with a drive manipulated variable detecting means which detects a drive manipulated variable that indicates a drive manipulation state of the vehicle driven by a driver of the vehicle
25 having a plurality of wheels, an actuator device provided in the vehicle so as to permit the manipulation of at least the driving/braking force of each wheel of the

vehicle, and an actuator device control means which sequentially controls an operation of the actuator device, the controller of a vehicle comprising:

an actual state amount grasping means which
5 detects or estimates a first actual state amount, which is the value of a predetermined first state amount related to a predetermined motion including at least a rotational motion in a yaw direction of an actual vehicle;

an actual road surface reaction force grasping
10 means which detects or estimates a road surface reaction force acting from a road surface onto each wheel of the actual vehicle;

a friction characteristic estimating means which estimates the characteristic of friction between a wheel
15 of the actual vehicle and the road surface;

a reference manipulated variable determining means which determines a first reference state amount, which is the reference value of the first state amount, based on at least the detected drive manipulated variable,

20 a state amount error calculating means which calculates a first state amount error, which is a difference between the detected or estimated first actual state amount and the determined first reference state amount; and

25 an actual vehicle actuator operation control input determining means which determines an actual vehicle actuator operation control input, which is a control input

for operating the actuator device and which includes a driving/braking force manipulation control input defining a target driving/braking force of each wheel of the actual vehicle, on the basis of at least the detected drive manipulated variable and the calculated first state amount error,

wherein the actuator device control means is a means which controls the operation of the actuator device on the basis of the determined actual vehicle actuator operation control input, and

the actual vehicle actuator operation control input determining means comprises:

a means which determines a feedback control input for manipulating the driving/braking force of each wheel for bringing the first state amount error close to zero on the basis of at least the calculated first state amount error;

a means which determines a feedforward control input defining a feedforward target value of the driving/braking force of each wheel on the basis of at least the detected drive operation input;

a means which determines, on a k-th wheel, which is one or more specific wheels of the plurality of wheels, a k-th elliptic function which is an elliptic function defining a correlation between a driving/braking force component and a lateral force component of a road surface reaction force which may act on the k-th wheel from a road

surface on the basis of the detected or estimated road surface reaction force of the k-th wheel and the estimated friction characteristic; and

a means which defines a predetermined required condition related to a relationship among at least a road surface reaction force that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to the determined k-th elliptic function, the feedforward control input of the k-th wheel, the feedback control input of the k-th wheel, and a driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel as a first required condition, defines a predetermined required condition related to a relationship between a driving/braking force at the generation of a maximum moment, which is a driving/braking force component of a road surface reaction force that is maximized in the same direction as the direction of a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of the actual vehicle due to the manipulation of the driving/braking force of the k-th wheel based on the feedback control input of the k-th wheel by a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of the actual vehicle by a road surface reaction force, in the road surface reaction force that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to at least the determined k-th elliptic function, and the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel as a second required condition, defines the

second required condition out of the first required condition and the second required condition as a priority condition, and determines the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel such that at least either one of the first required condition and the second required condition is satisfied.

[3] A controller of a vehicle equipped with a drive manipulated variable detecting means which detects a drive manipulated variable that indicates a drive manipulation state of the vehicle driven by a driver of the vehicle having a plurality of wheels, an actuator device provided in the vehicle so as to permit the manipulation of at least the driving/braking force of each wheel of the vehicle, and an actuator device control means which sequentially controls an operation of the actuator device, the controller of a vehicle comprising:

an actual state amount grasping means which detects or estimates a first actual state amount, which is the value of a predetermined first state amount related to a predetermined motion including at least a rotational motion in a yaw direction of an actual vehicle;

an actual road surface reaction force grasping means which detects or estimates a road surface reaction force acting from a road surface onto each wheel of the actual vehicle;

a friction characteristic estimating means which estimates the characteristic of friction between a wheel

of the actual vehicle and the road surface;

a reference manipulated variable determining means which determines a first reference state amount, which is the reference value of the first state amount, based on at least the detected drive manipulated variable,

a state amount error calculating means which calculates a first state amount error, which is a difference between the detected or estimated first actual state amount and the determined first reference state amount; and

an actual vehicle actuator operation control input determining means which determines an actual vehicle actuator operation control input, which is a control input for operating the actuator device and which includes a driving/braking force manipulation control input defining a target driving/braking force of each wheel of the actual vehicle, on the basis of at least the detected drive manipulated variable and the calculated first state amount error,

wherein the actuator device control means is a means which controls the operation of the actuator device on the basis of the determined actual vehicle actuator operation control input, and

the actual vehicle actuator operation control input determining means comprises:

a means which determines a feedback control input for manipulating the driving/braking force of each wheel

for bringing the first state amount error close to zero on the basis of at least the calculated first state amount error;

a means which determines a feedforward control input defining a feedforward target value of the driving/braking force of each wheel on the basis of at least the detected drive operation input;

a means which determines, on a k-th wheel, which is one or more specific wheels of the plurality of wheels, a k-th elliptic function which is an elliptic function defining a correlation between a driving/braking force component and a lateral force component of a road surface reaction force which may act on the k-th wheel from a road surface on the basis of the detected or estimated road surface reaction force of the k-th wheel and the estimated friction characteristic; and

a means which defines a predetermined required condition related to a relationship among at least a road surface reaction force that may act on the k-th wheel according to the determined k-th elliptic function, the feedforward control input of the k-th wheel, the feedback control input of the k-th wheel, and a driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel as a first required condition, defines a predetermined required condition related to a relationship between the feedforward target value defined by the determined feedforward control input of the k-th wheel and a

driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel as a third required condition, defines the third required condition out of the first required condition and the third required condition as a priority condition, and
5 determines the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel such that at least either one of the first required condition and the third required condition is satisfied.

[4] A controller of a vehicle equipped with a drive
10 manipulated variable detecting means which detects a drive manipulated variable that indicates a drive manipulation state of the vehicle driven by a driver of the vehicle having a plurality of wheels, an actuator device provided in the vehicle so as to permit the manipulation of at
15 least the driving/braking force of each wheel of the vehicle, and an actuator device control means which sequentially controls an operation of the actuator device, the controller of a vehicle comprising:

an actual state amount grasping means which
20 detects or estimates a first actual state amount, which is the value of a predetermined first state amount related to a predetermined motion including at least a rotational motion in a yaw direction of an actual vehicle;

an actual road surface reaction force grasping
25 means which detects or estimates a road surface reaction force acting from a road surface onto each wheel of the actual vehicle;

a friction characteristic estimating means which estimates the characteristic of friction between a wheel of the actual vehicle and the road surface;

a reference manipulated variable determining means
5 which determines a first reference state amount, which is the reference value of the first state amount, based on at least the detected drive manipulated variable,

a state amount error calculating means which calculates a first state amount error, which is a
10 difference between the detected or estimated first actual state amount and the determined first reference state amount; and

an actual vehicle actuator operation control input determining means which determines an actual vehicle
15 actuator operation control input, which is a control input for operating the actuator device and which includes a driving/braking force manipulation control input defining a target driving/braking force of each wheel of the actual vehicle, on the basis of at least the detected drive
20 manipulated variable and the calculated first state amount error,

wherein the actuator device control means is a means which controls the operation of the actuator device on the basis of the determined actual vehicle actuator
25 operation control input, and

the actual vehicle actuator operation control input determining means comprises:

a means which determines a feedback control input for manipulating the driving/braking force of each wheel for bringing the first state amount error close to zero on the basis of at least the calculated first state amount error;

a means which determines a feedforward control input defining a feedforward target value of the driving/braking force of each wheel on the basis of at least the detected drive operation input;

a means which determines, on a k-th wheel, which is one or more specific wheels of the plurality of wheels, a k-th elliptic function which is an elliptic function defining a correlation between a driving/braking force component and a lateral force component of a road surface reaction force which may act on the k-th wheel from a road surface on the basis of the detected or estimated road surface reaction force of the k-th wheel and the estimated friction characteristic; and

a means which defines a predetermined required condition related to a relationship among at least a road surface reaction force that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to the determined k-th elliptic function, the feedforward control input of the k-th wheel, the feedback control input of the k-th wheel, and a driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel as a first required condition, defines a predetermined required condition related to a relationship

- 272 -

between a driving/braking force at the generation of a maximum moment, which is a driving/braking force component of a road surface reaction force that is maximized in the same direction as the direction of a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of the actual vehicle due to the manipulation of the driving/braking force of the k-th wheel based on the feedback control input of the k-th wheel by a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of the actual vehicle by a road surface reaction force, in the road surface reaction force that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to at least the determined k-th elliptic function, and the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel as a second required condition, defines a predetermined required condition related to a relationship between the feedforward target value defined by the determined feedforward control input of the k-th wheel and the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel as a third required condition, defines the third required condition out of the first required condition, the second required condition, and the third required condition as a highest-rank priority condition, defines the second required condition as the next-tank priority condition, and determines the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel such that at least one of the first required condition, the

second required condition, and the third required condition is satisfied.

[5] The controller of a vehicle according to Claim 1, wherein the feedback control input is a control input which defines a target value of a manipulated variable of a driving/braking force of each wheel, and

in the case where the total sum of the target value of the manipulated variable of a driving/braking force specified by a feedback control input of the k-th wheel and the feedforward target value of a driving/braking force specified by a feedforward control input of the k-th wheel is defined as an unlimited k-th wheel required driving/braking force, the first required condition is a condition that the target driving/braking force specified by the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel takes a value in a range of the values of the driving/braking force components of the road surface reaction forces that may act from a road surface onto the k-th wheel according to the k-th elliptic function and that the absolute value of a difference from the unlimited k-th wheel required driving/braking force is minimized.

[6] The controller of a vehicle according to Claim 2, wherein the feedback control input is a control input which defines a target value of a manipulated variable of a driving/braking force of each wheel, and

in the case where the total sum of the target value of the manipulated variable of a driving/braking force

specified by a feedback control input of the k-th wheel and the feedforward target value of a driving/braking force specified by a feedforward control input of the k-th wheel is defined as an unlimited k-th wheel required driving/braking force, the first required condition is a condition that the target driving/braking force specified by the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel takes a value in a range of the values of the driving/braking force components of the road surface reaction forces that may act from a road surface onto the k-th wheel according to the k-th elliptic function and that the absolute value of a difference from the unlimited k-th wheel required driving/braking force is minimized.

[7] The controller of a vehicle according to Claim 3, wherein the feedback control input is a control input which defines a target value of a manipulated variable of a driving/braking force of each wheel, and

in the case where the total sum of the target value of the manipulated variable of a driving/braking force specified by a feedback control input of the k-th wheel and the feedforward target value of a driving/braking force specified by a feedforward control input of the k-th wheel is defined as an unlimited k-th wheel required driving/braking force, the first required condition is a condition that the target driving/braking force specified by the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel takes a value in a range of the values of

the driving/braking force components of the road surface reaction forces that may act from a road surface onto the k-th wheel according to the k-th elliptic function and that the absolute value of a difference from the unlimited k-th wheel required driving/braking force is minimized.

[8] The controller of a vehicle according to Claim 4, wherein the feedback control input is a control input which defines a target value of a manipulated variable of a driving/braking force of each wheel, and

in the case where the total sum of the target value of the manipulated variable of a driving/braking force specified by a feedback control input of the k-th wheel and the feedforward target value of a driving/braking force specified by a feedforward control input of the k-th wheel is defined as an unlimited k-th wheel required driving/braking force, the first required condition is a condition that the target driving/braking force specified by the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel takes a value in a range of the values of the driving/braking force components of the road surface reaction forces that may act from a road surface onto the k-th wheel according to the k-th elliptic function and that the absolute value of a difference from the unlimited k-th wheel required driving/braking force is minimized.

[9] The controller of a vehicle according to Claim 1, wherein the feedback control input is a control input that defines the target value of a moment in the yaw direction

generated about the center-of-gravity point of an actual vehicle caused by the manipulation of the driving/braking force of each wheel by the feedback control input, and

in the case where the total sum of the target values
5 of a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of an actual vehicle by a road surface reaction force which has a driving/braking force component in a road surface reaction force that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to the k-
10 th elliptic function, the driving/braking force component leading to a minimum absolute value of the difference from the feedforward target value of a driving/braking force specified by a feedforward control input of the k-th wheel, and a moment in the yaw direction specified by a feedback
15 control input of the k-th wheel is defined as an unlimited k-th wheel required moment, the first required condition is a condition that the target driving/braking force specified by a driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel takes a value in a range of the
20 values of the driving/braking force components of road surface reaction forces that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to the k-th elliptic function and that the absolute value of the difference between the moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-
25 gravity point of an actual vehicle by a road surface reaction force which has a driving/braking force component equivalent to a target driving/braking force of the k-th

wheel in the road surface reaction forces that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to the k-th elliptic function, and the unlimited k-th wheel required moment is minimum.

5 [10] The controller of a vehicle according to Claim 2, wherein the feedback control input is a control input that defines the target value of a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of an actual vehicle caused by the manipulation of the driving/braking
10 force of each wheel by the feedback control input, and in the case where the total sum of the target values of a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of an actual vehicle by a road surface reaction force which has a driving/braking force
15 component in a road surface reaction force that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to the k-th elliptic function, the driving/braking force component leading to a minimum absolute value of the difference from the feedforward target value of a driving/braking force
20 specified by a feedforward control input of the k-th wheel, and a moment in the yaw direction specified by a feedback control input of the k-th wheel is defined as an unlimited k-th wheel required moment, the first required condition is a condition that the target driving/braking force
25 specified by a driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel takes a value in a range of the values of the driving/braking force components of road

surface reaction forces that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to the k-th elliptic function and that the absolute value of the difference between the moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of an actual vehicle by a road surface reaction force which has a driving/braking force component equivalent to a target driving/braking force of the k-th wheel in the road surface reaction forces that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to the k-th elliptic function, and the unlimited k-th wheel required moment is minimum.

[11] The controller of a vehicle according to Claim 3, wherein the feedback control input is a control input that defines the target value of a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of an actual vehicle caused by the manipulation of the driving/braking force of each wheel by the feedback control input, and

in the case where the total sum of the target values of a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of an actual vehicle by a road surface reaction force which has a driving/braking force component in a road surface reaction force that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to the k-th elliptic function, the driving/braking force component leading to a minimum absolute value of the difference from the feedforward target value of a driving/braking force specified by a feedforward control input of the k-th wheel,

and a moment in the yaw direction specified by a feedback control input of the k-th wheel is defined as an unlimited k-th wheel required moment, the first required condition is a condition that the target driving/braking force specified by a driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel takes a value in a range of the values of the driving/braking force components of road surface reaction forces that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to the k-th elliptic function and that the absolute value of the difference between the moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of an actual vehicle by a road surface reaction force which has a driving/braking force component equivalent to a target driving/braking force of the k-th wheel in the road surface reaction forces that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to the k-th elliptic function, and the unlimited k-th wheel required moment is minimum.

[12] The controller of a vehicle according to Claim 4, wherein the feedback control input is a control input that defines the target value of a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of an actual vehicle caused by the manipulation of the driving/braking force of each wheel by the feedback control input, and

in the case where the total sum of the target values of a moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of an actual vehicle by a road

- 280 -

surface reaction force which has a driving/braking force component in a road surface reaction force that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to the k-th elliptic function, the driving/braking force component leading to a minimum absolute value of the difference from the feedforward target value of a driving/braking force specified by a feedforward control input of the k-th wheel, and a moment in the yaw direction specified by a feedback control input of the k-th wheel is defined as an unlimited k-th wheel required moment, the first required condition is a condition that the target driving/braking force specified by a driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel takes a value in a range of the values of the driving/braking force components of road surface reaction forces that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to the k-th elliptic function and that the absolute value of the difference between the moment in the yaw direction generated about the center-of-gravity point of an actual vehicle by a road surface reaction force which has a driving/braking force component equivalent to a target driving/braking force of the k-th wheel in the road surface reaction forces that may act from a road surface on the k-th wheel according to the k-th elliptic function, and the unlimited k-th wheel required moment is minimum.

[13] The controller of a vehicle according to Claim 2, wherein the second required condition is a condition that

- 281 -

the direction of a target k-th wheel driving/braking force, which is a target driving/braking force specified by a driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel and the direction of the k-th wheel

5 driving/braking force at the generation of a maximum moment are opposite from each other, or the absolute value of the target k-th wheel driving/braking force is not more than the absolute value of the k-th wheel driving/braking force at the generation of a maximum moment.

10 [14] The controller of a vehicle according to Claim 4, wherein the second required condition is a condition that the direction of a target k-th wheel driving/braking force, which is a target driving/braking force specified by a driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-
15 th wheel and the direction of the k-th wheel driving/braking force at the generation of a maximum moment are opposite from each other, or the absolute value of the target k-th wheel driving/braking force is not more than the absolute value of the k-th wheel driving/braking
20 force at the generation of a maximum moment.

[15] The controller of a vehicle according to Claim 3, wherein the third required condition is a condition that, in the case where a target k-th wheel driving/braking force, which is a target driving/braking force specified
25 by the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel, is a driving/braking force in the braking direction, and a feedforward target value of a

driving/braking force specified by a feedforward control input of the k-th wheel is a driving/braking force in the braking direction, the absolute value of the target k-th wheel driving/braking force is not less than the absolute value of a feedforward target value of a driving/braking force of the k-th wheel.

[16] The controller of a vehicle according to Claim 4, wherein the third required condition is a condition that, in the case where a target k-th wheel driving/braking force, which is a target driving/braking force specified by the driving/braking force manipulation control input of the k-th wheel, is a driving/braking force in the braking direction, and a feedforward target value of a driving/braking force specified by a feedforward control input of the k-th wheel is a driving/braking force in the braking direction, the absolute value of the target k-th wheel driving/braking force is not less than the absolute value of a feedforward target value of a driving/braking force of the k-th wheel.

[17] The controller of a vehicle according to Claim 1, further comprising: a vehicle model established beforehand as a model that expresses the dynamic characteristics of the vehicle and a vehicle model operation control input determining means which determines a vehicle model operation control input for manipulating a motion which includes at least a rotational motion in the yaw direction of a vehicle on the vehicle model on the basis of at least

- 283 -

the calculated first state amount error such that the first state amount error is approximated to zero,

wherein the reference state amount determining means is a means which inputs at least the detected drive operation input and the determined vehicle model operation control input into the vehicle model to determine a first state amount related to the predetermined motion including the rotational motion in the yaw direction of the vehicle on the vehicle model as the first reference state amount.

[18] The controller of a vehicle according to Claim 2, further comprising: a vehicle model established beforehand as a model that expresses the dynamic characteristics of the vehicle and a vehicle model operation control input determining means which determines a vehicle model operation control input for manipulating a motion which includes at least a rotational motion in the yaw direction of a vehicle on the vehicle model on the basis of at least the calculated first state amount error such that the first state amount error is approximated to zero,

wherein the reference state amount determining means is a means which inputs at least the detected drive operation input and the determined vehicle model operation control input into the vehicle model to determine a first state amount related to the predetermined motion including the rotational motion in the yaw direction of the vehicle on the vehicle model as the first reference state amount.

[19] The controller of a vehicle according to Claim 3,

further comprising: a vehicle model established beforehand as a model that expresses the dynamic characteristics of the vehicle and a vehicle model operation control input determining means which determines a vehicle model operation control input for manipulating a motion which includes at least a rotational motion in the yaw direction of a vehicle on the vehicle model on the basis of at least the calculated first state amount error such that the first state amount error is approximated to zero,

wherein the reference state amount determining means is a means which inputs at least the detected drive operation input and the determined vehicle model operation control input into the vehicle model to determine a first state amount related to the predetermined motion including the rotational motion in the yaw direction of the vehicle on the vehicle model as the first reference state amount.

[20] The controller of a vehicle according to Claim 4, further comprising: a vehicle model established beforehand as a model that expresses the dynamic characteristics of the vehicle and a vehicle model operation control input determining means which determines a vehicle model operation control input for manipulating a motion which includes at least a rotational motion in the yaw direction of a vehicle on the vehicle model on the basis of at least the calculated first state amount error such that the first state amount error is approximated to zero,

wherein the reference state amount determining means

- 285 -

is a means which inputs at least the detected drive
operation input and the determined vehicle model operation
control input into the vehicle model to determine a first
state amount related to the predetermined motion including
5 the rotational motion in the yaw direction of the vehicle
on the vehicle model as the first reference state amount.

1 / 26

FIG.1

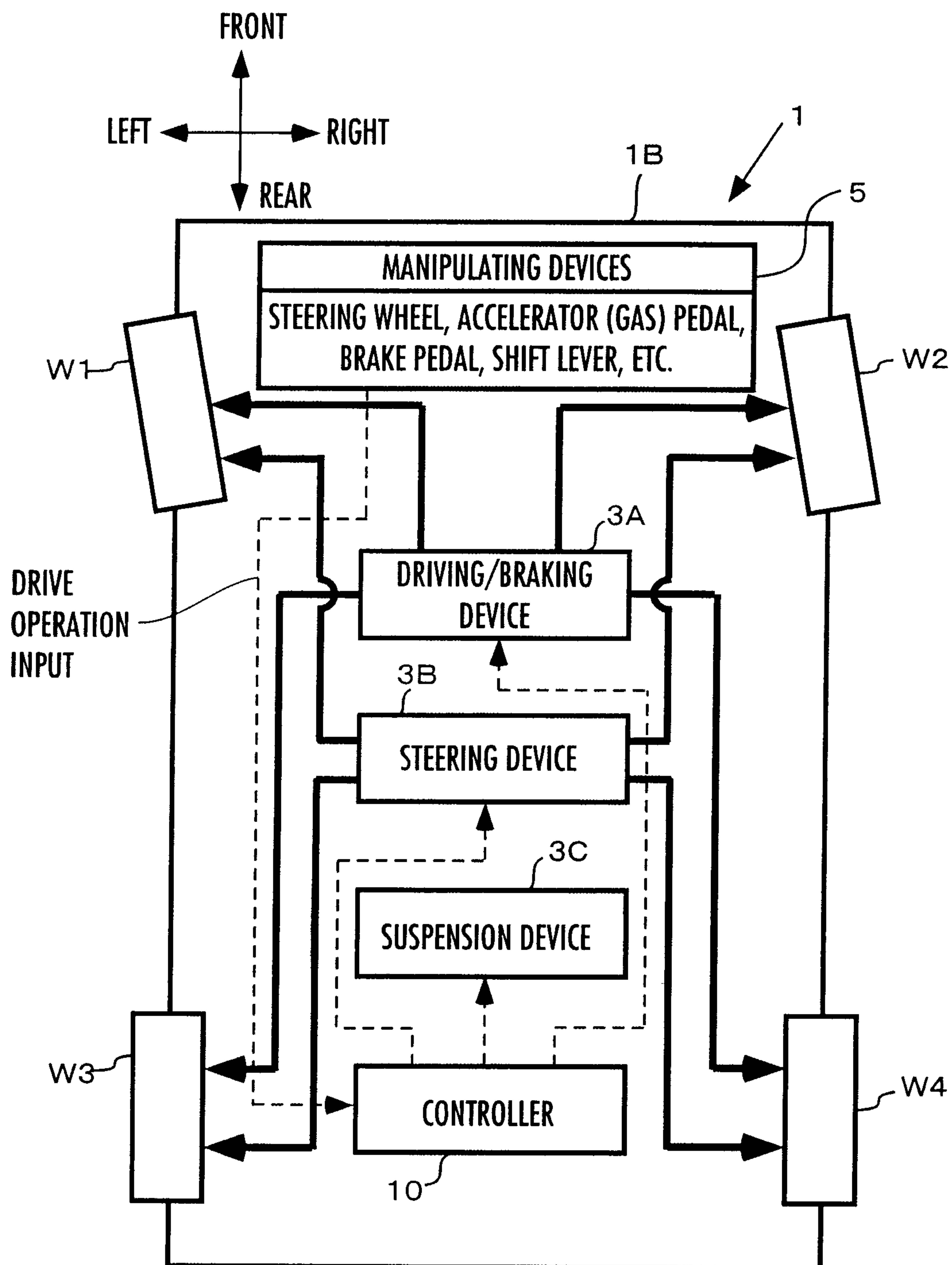


FIG.2

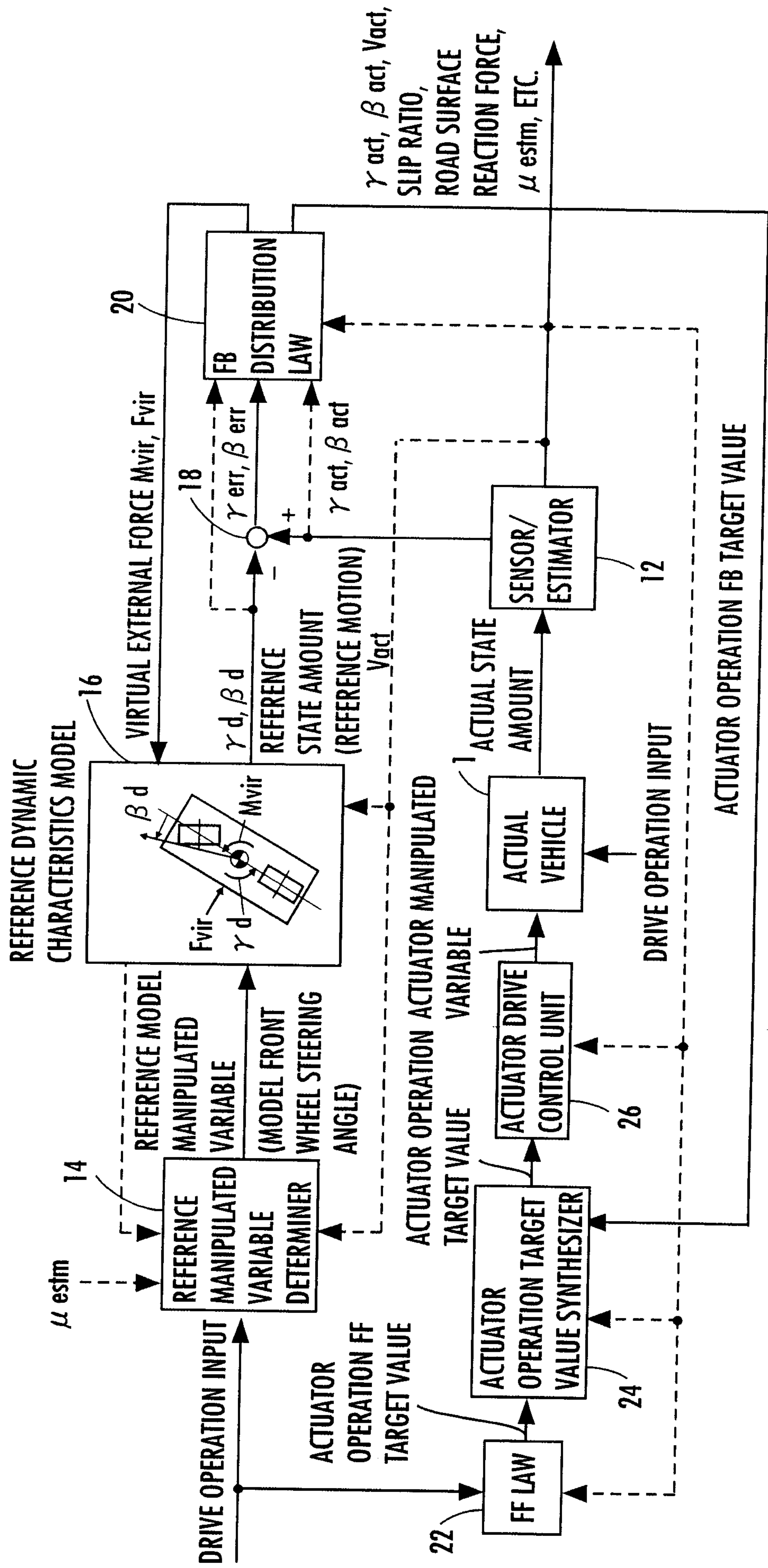


FIG.3

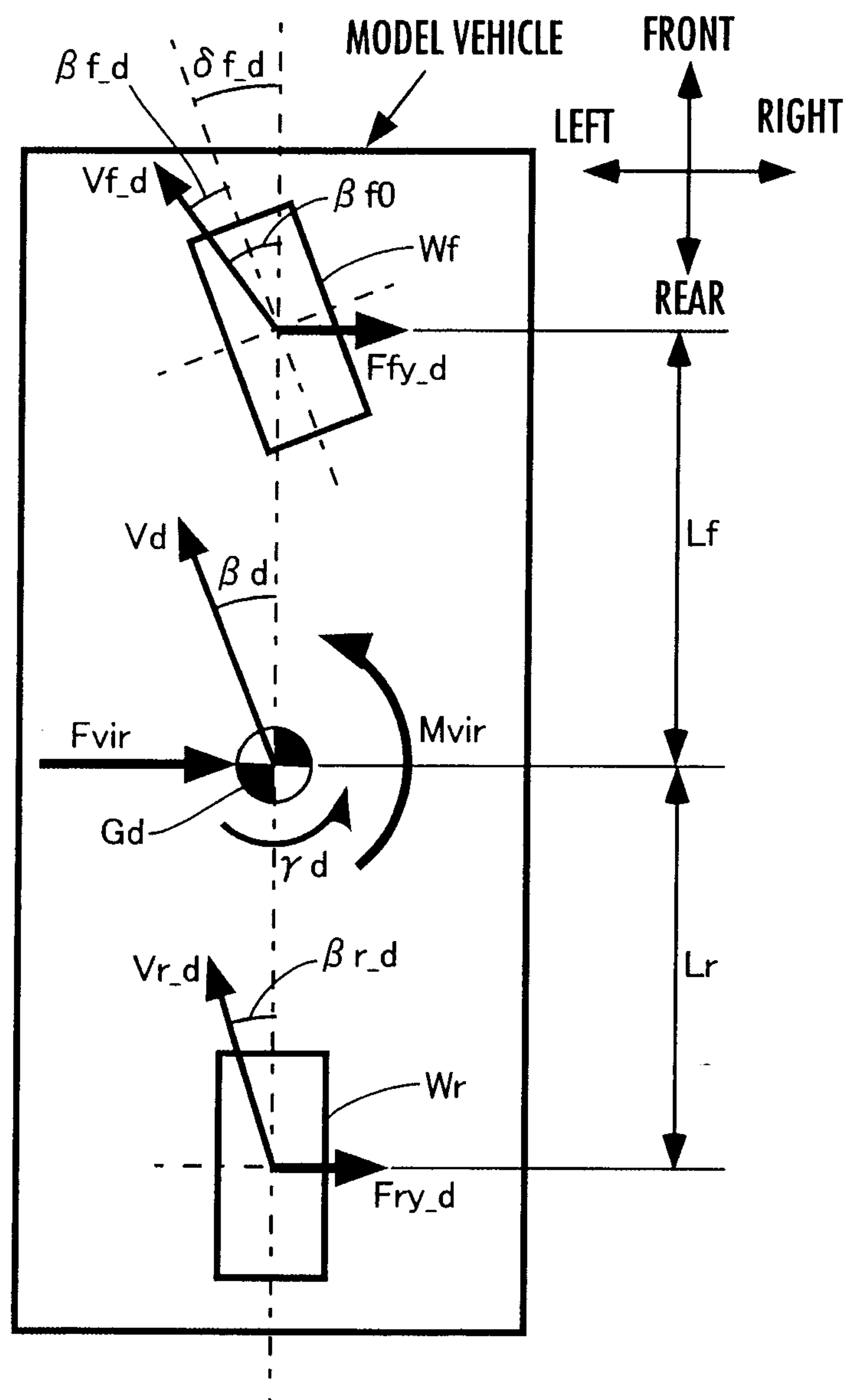
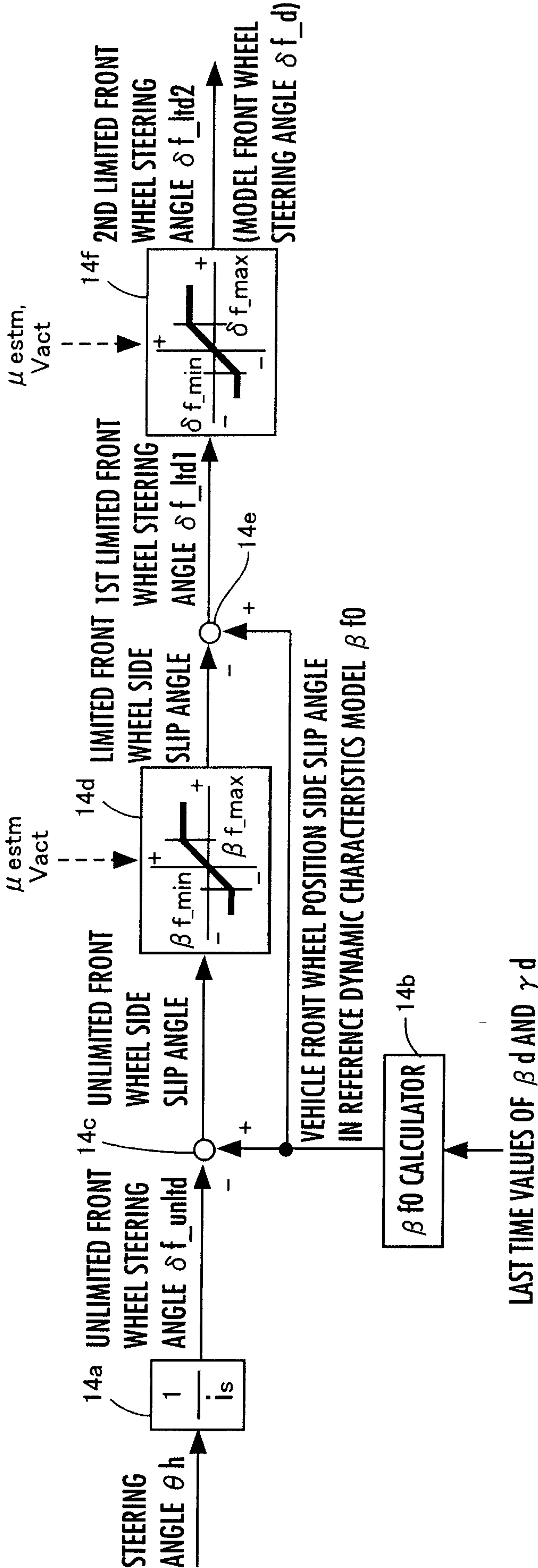


FIG.4



5 / 26

FIG.5(a)

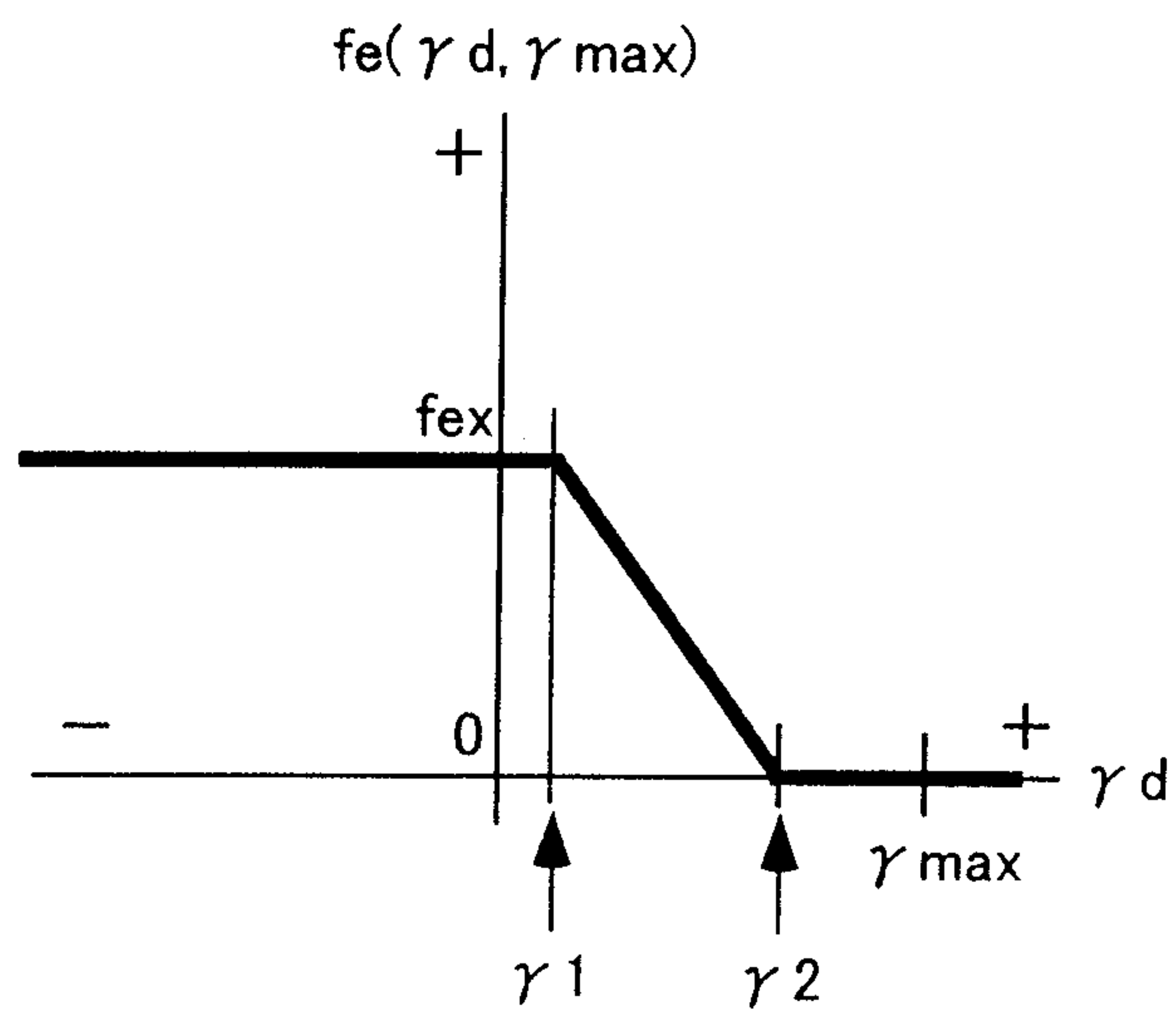
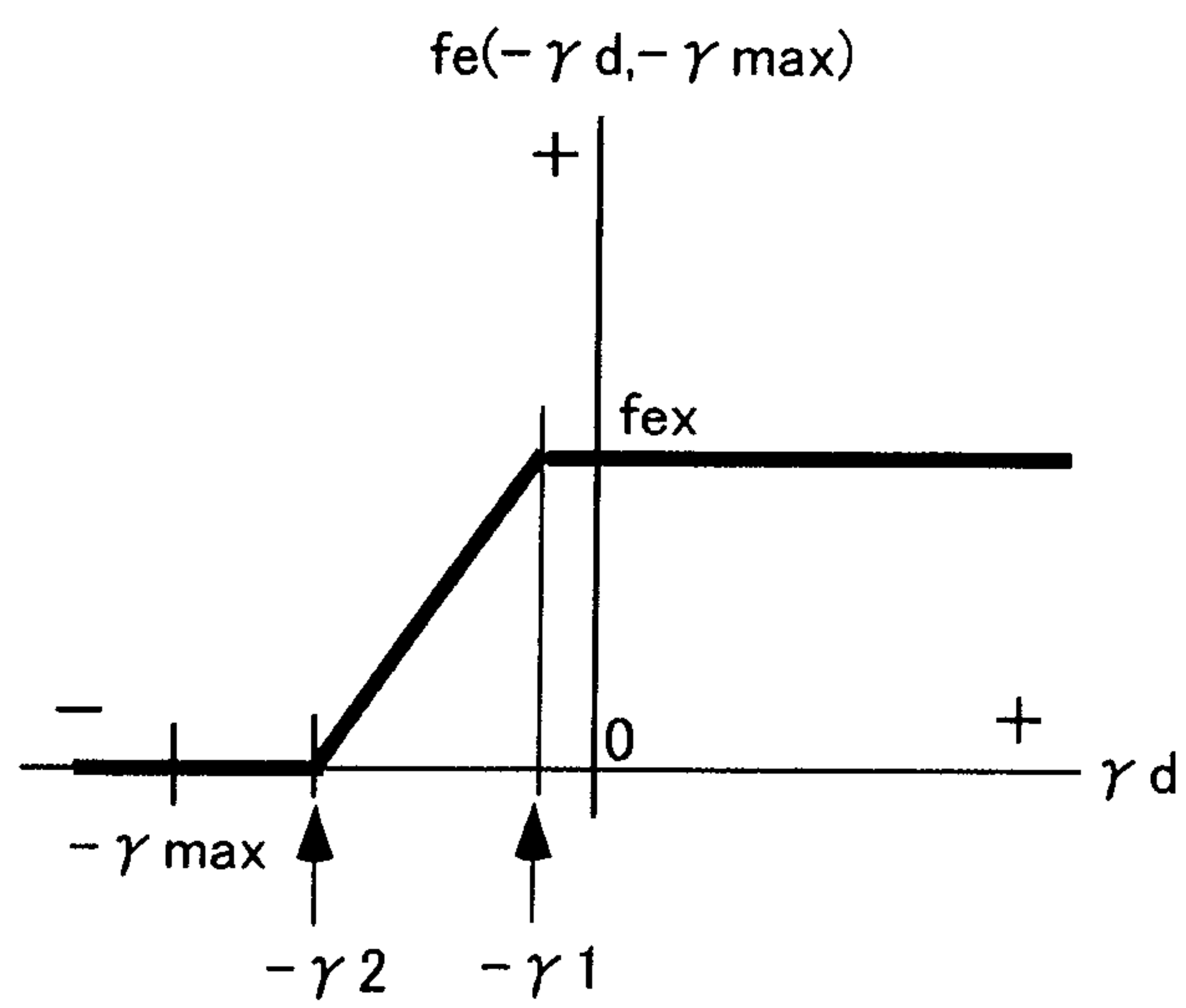


FIG.5(b)



6 / 26

FIG.6

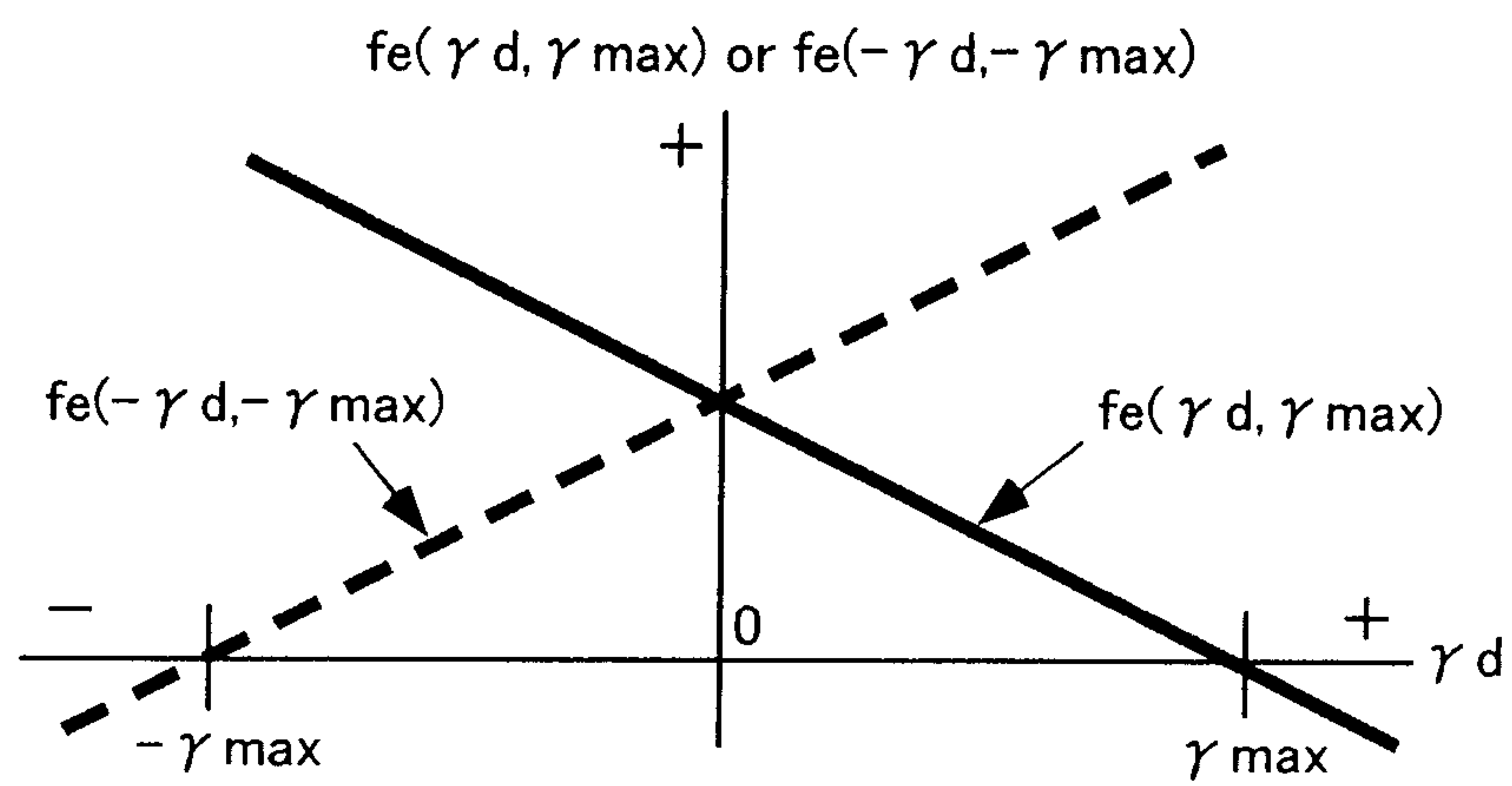


FIG.7

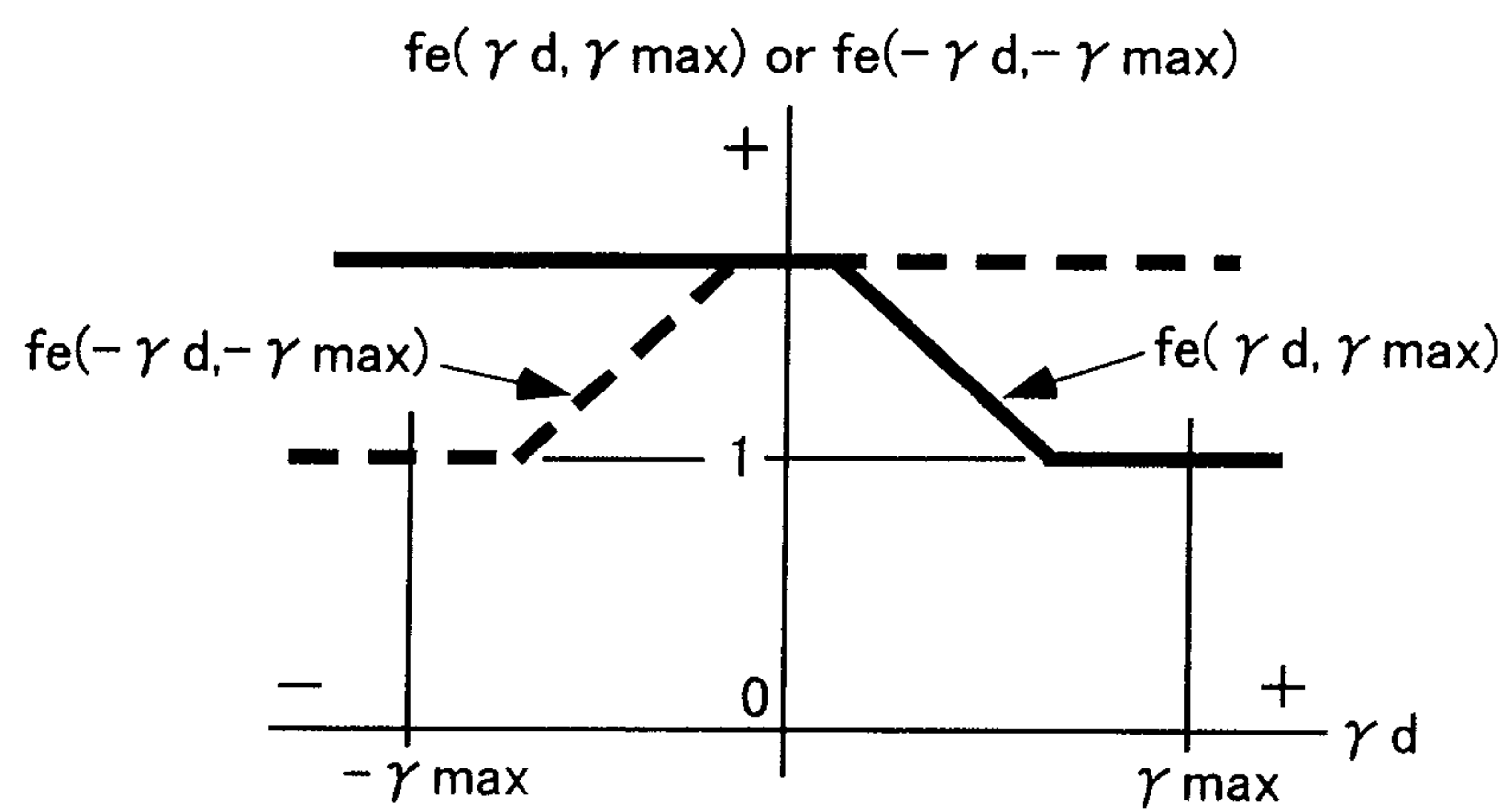


FIG.8

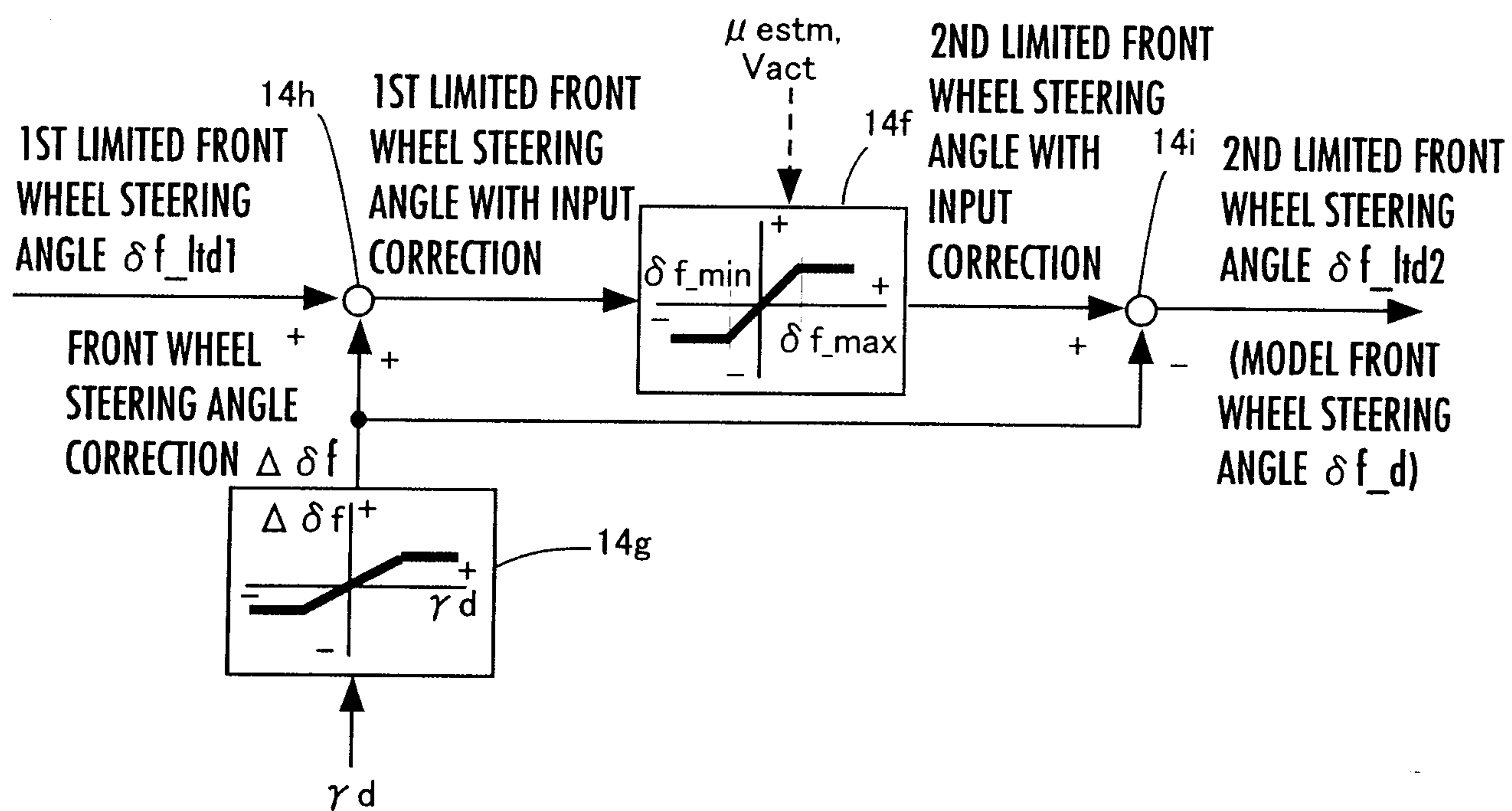


FIG. 9

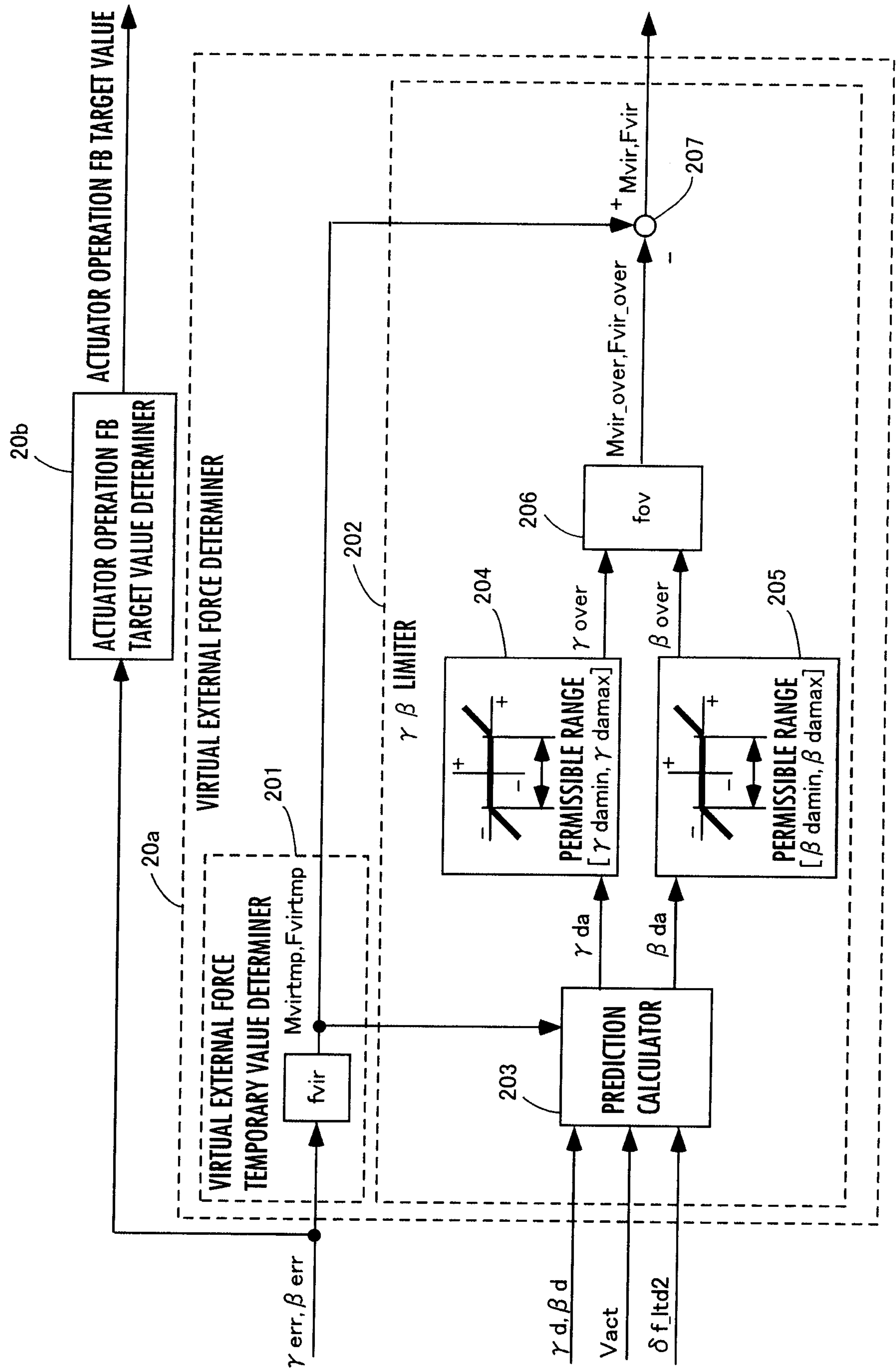
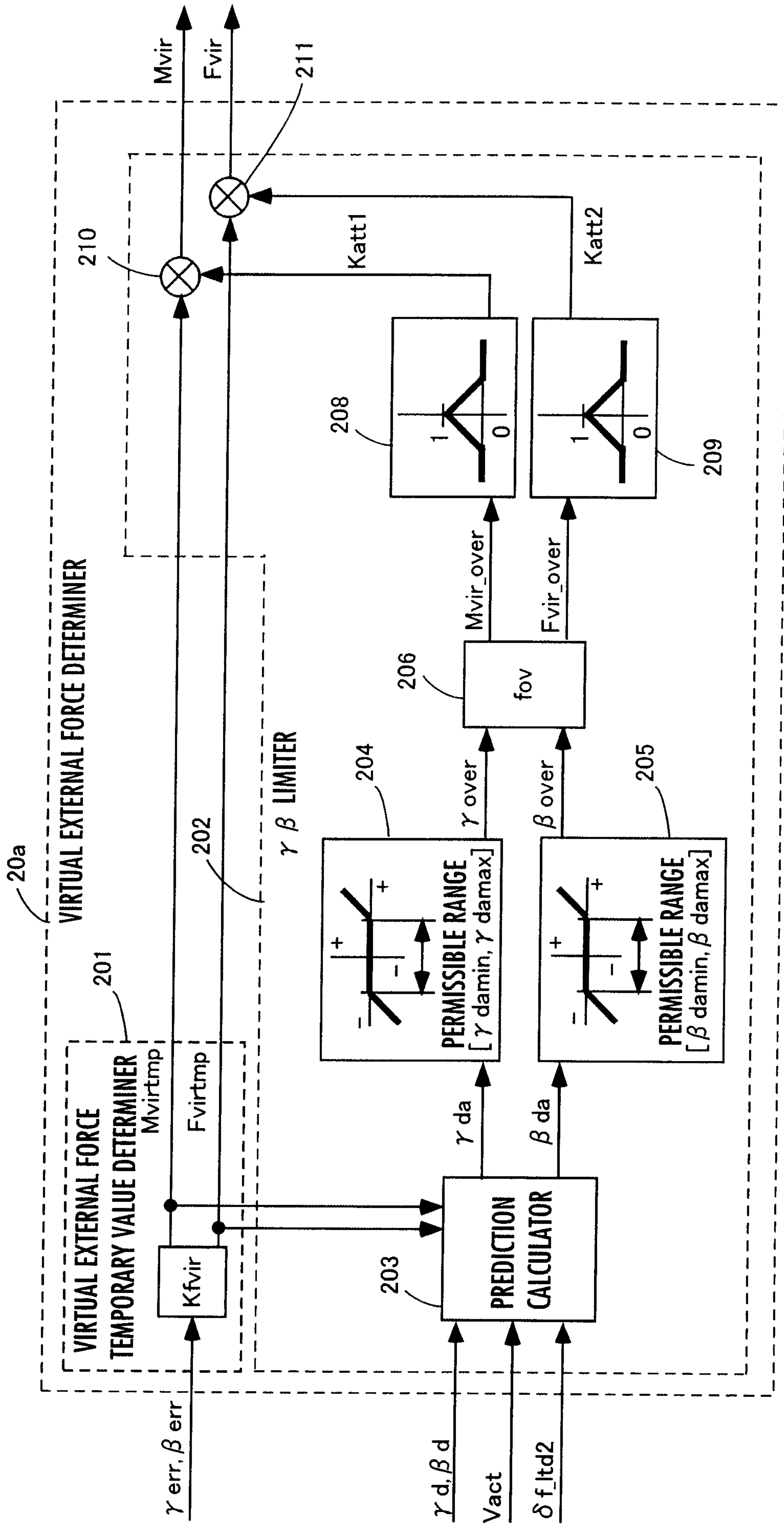


FIG.10



10 / 26

FIG.11

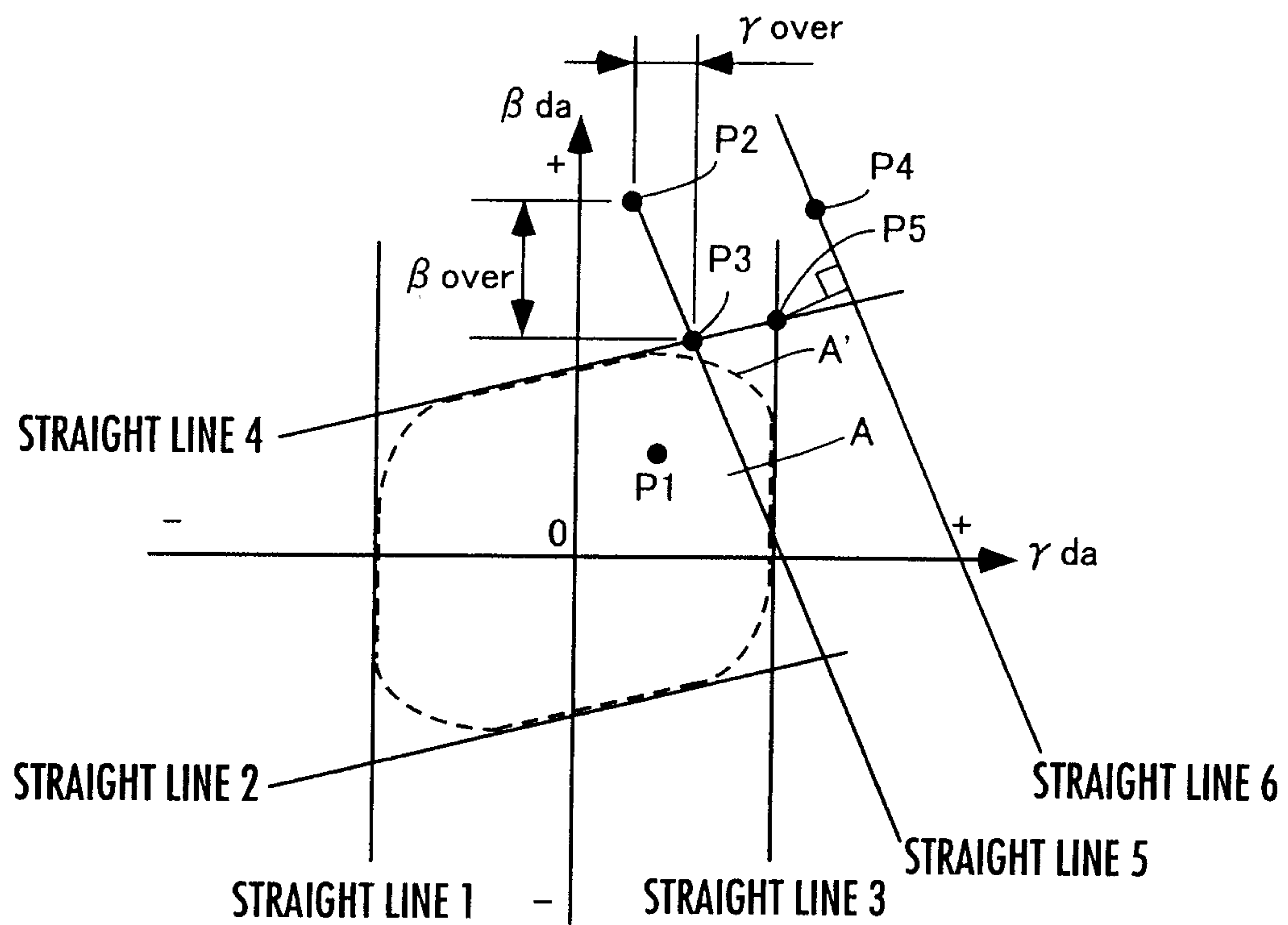


FIG. 12

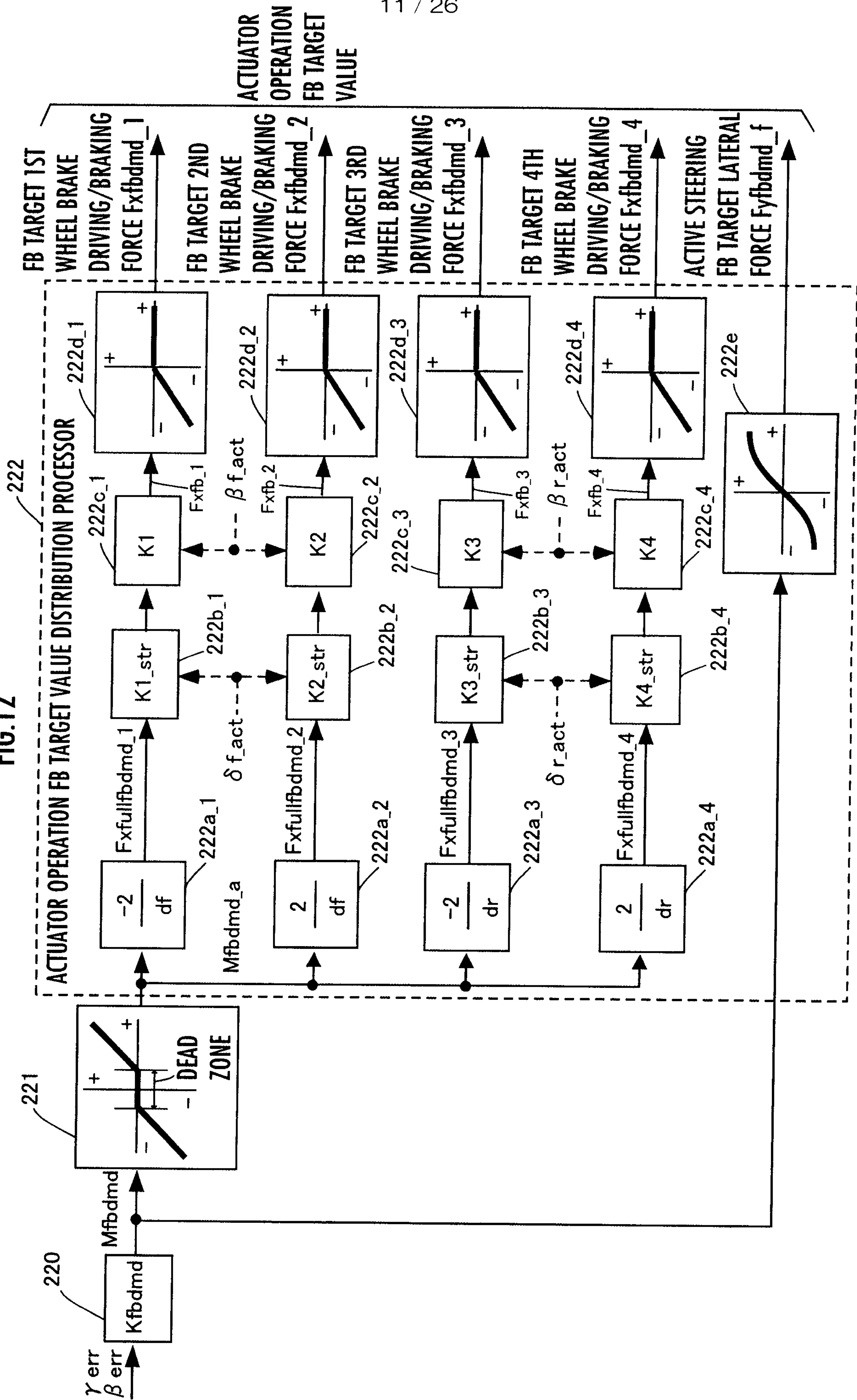
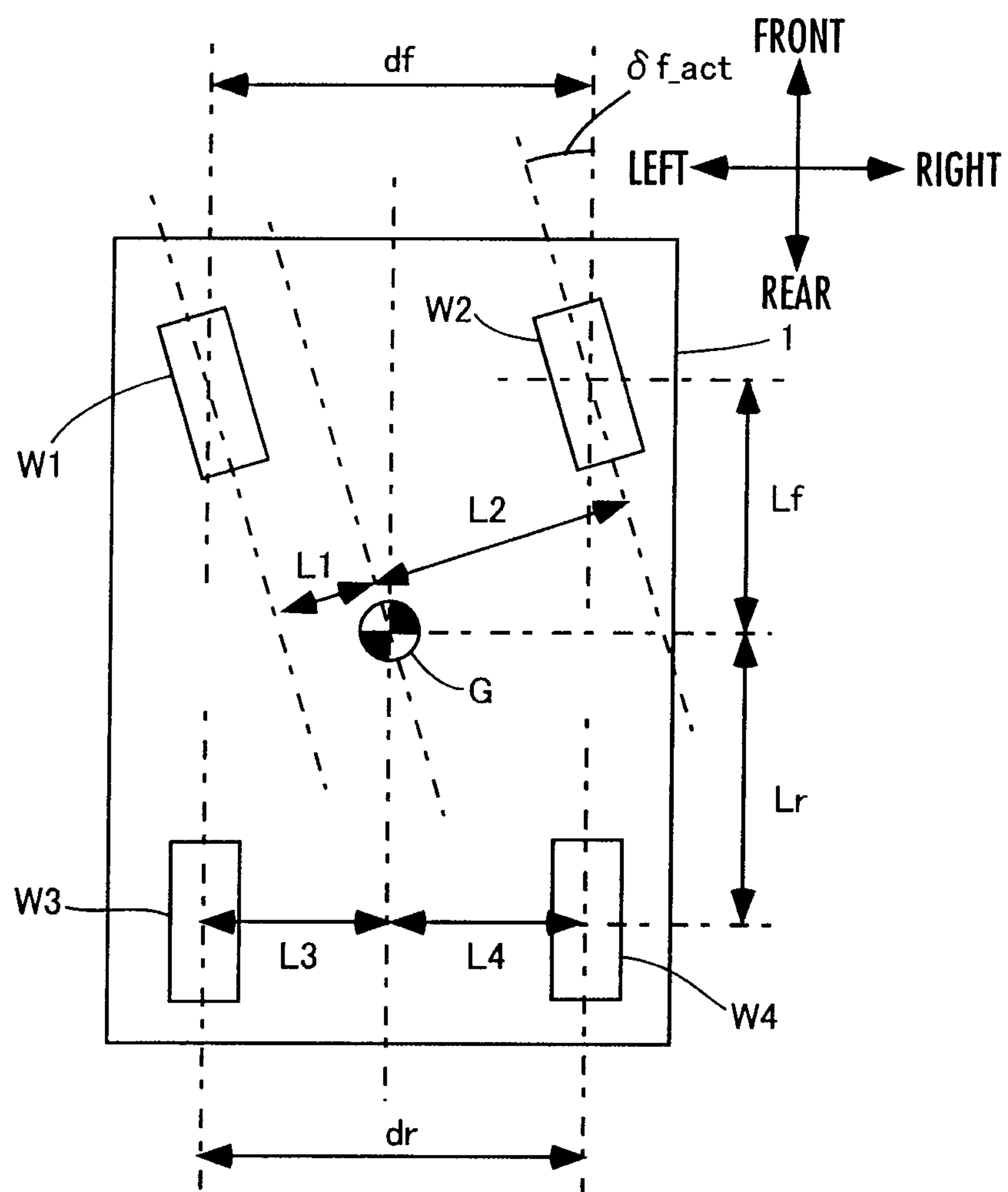


FIG. 13



13 / 26

FIG.1 4(a)

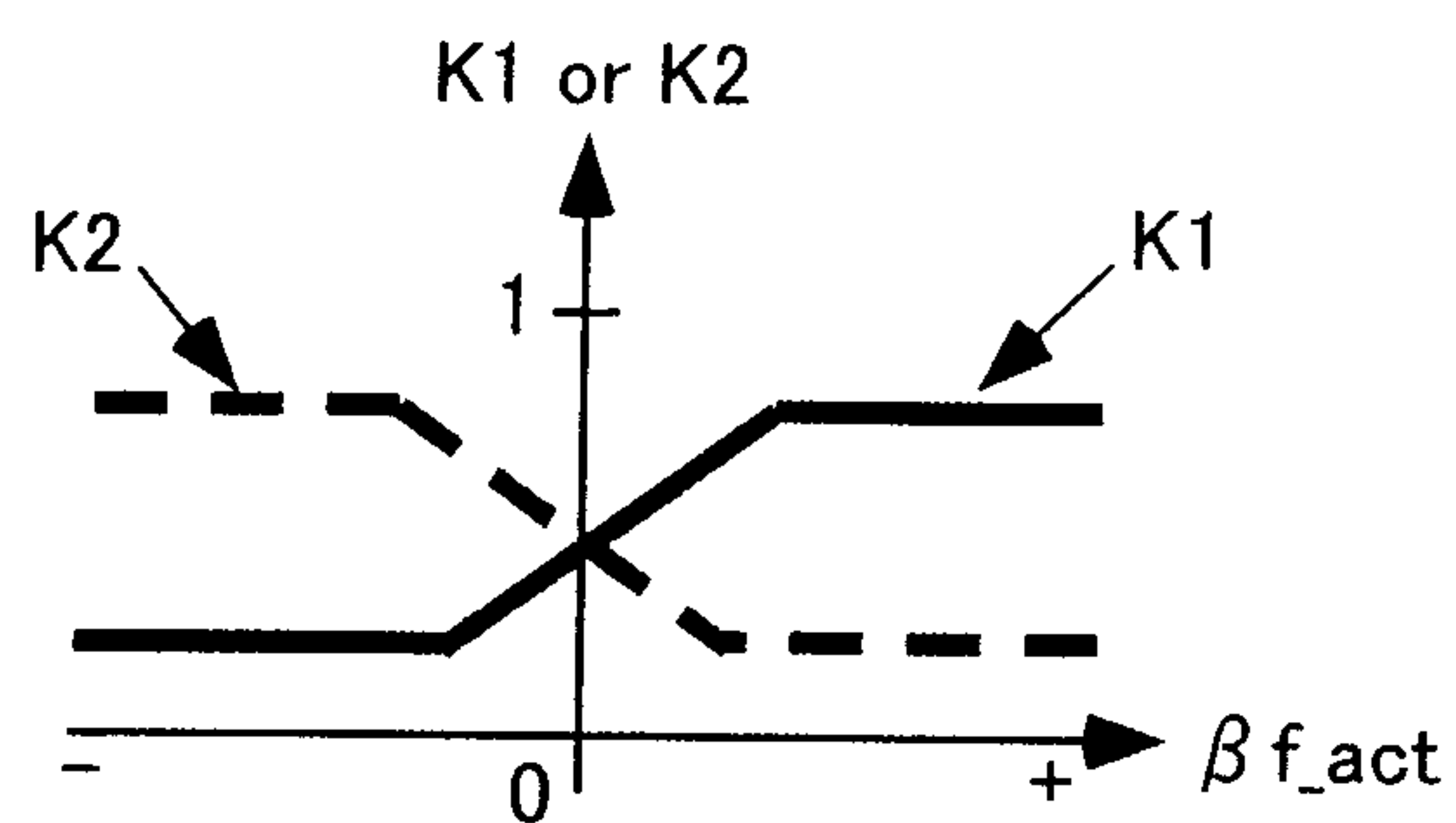


FIG.1 4(b)

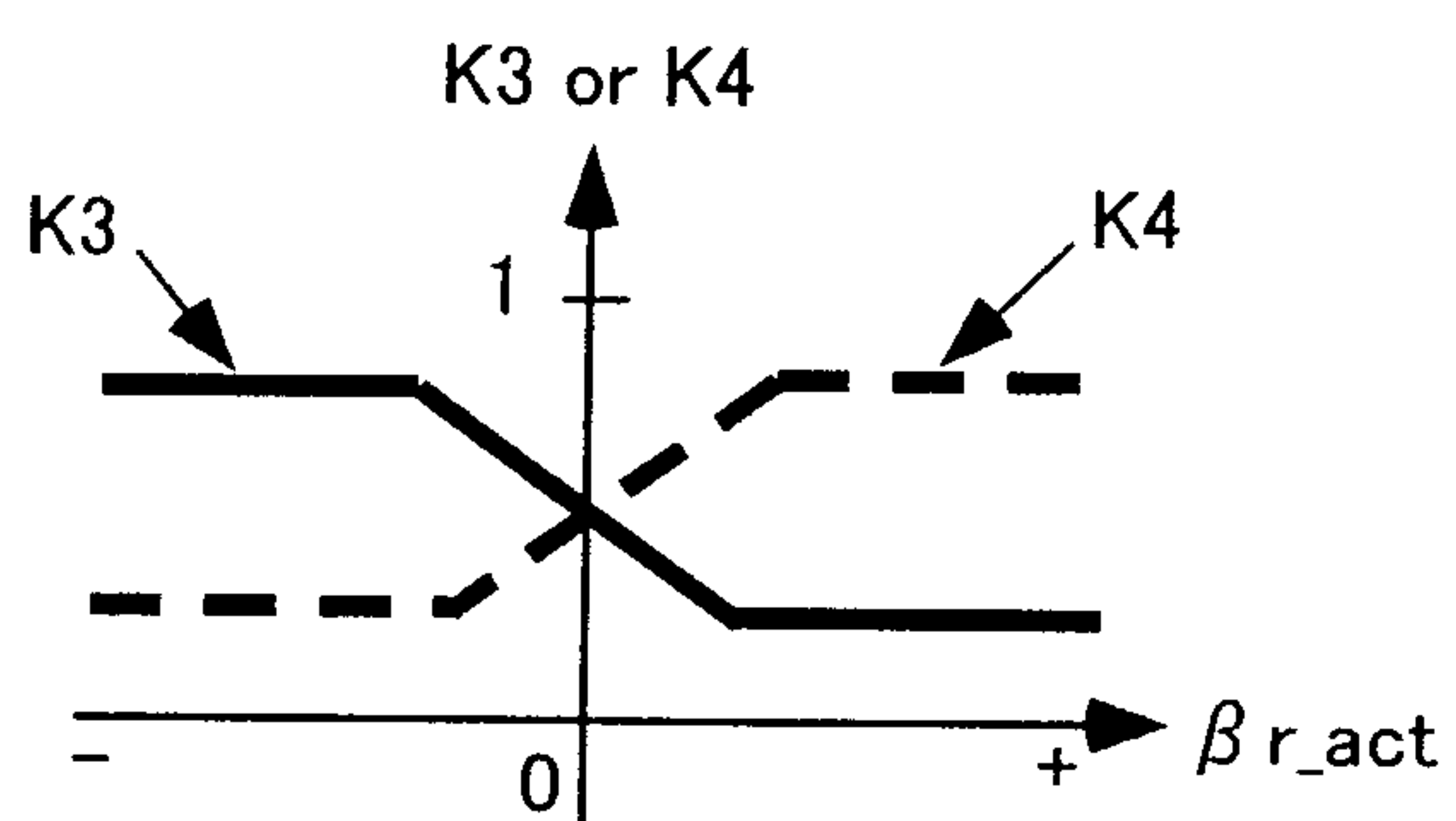


FIG.1 5(a)

$$\beta f_{act} = \beta f_{--}$$

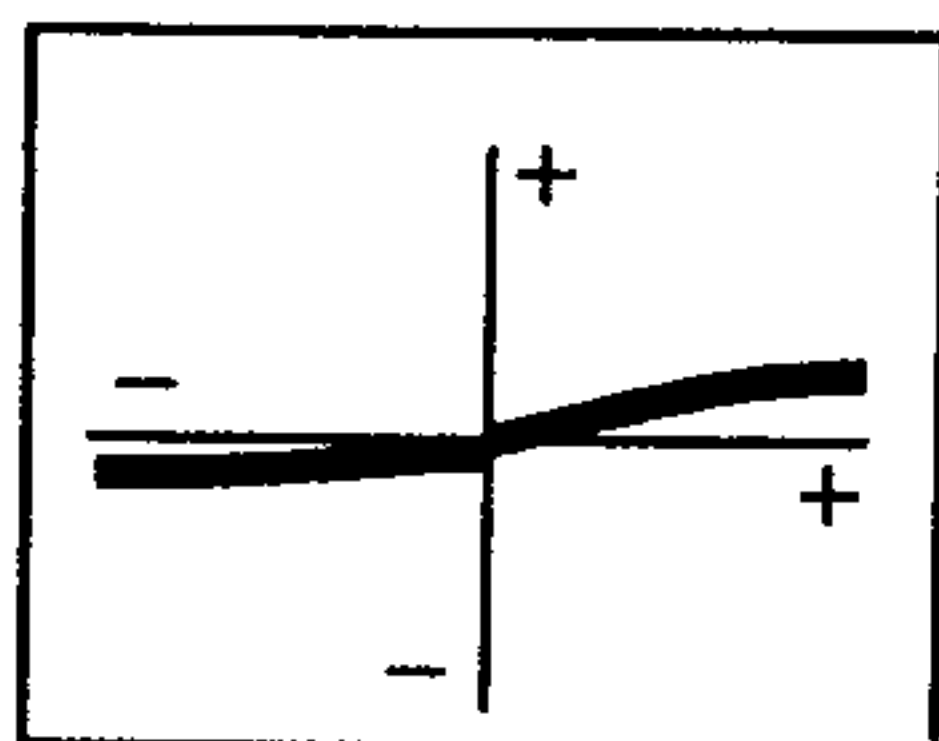


FIG.1 5(b)

$$\beta f_{act} = \beta f_{-}$$

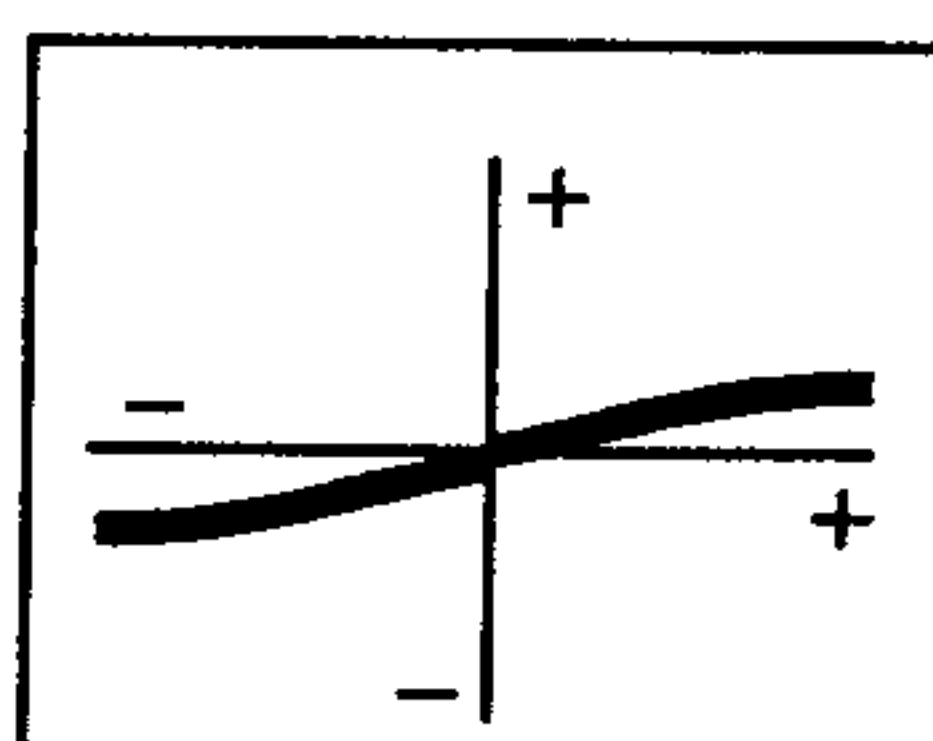


FIG.1 5(c)

$$\beta f_{act} = 0$$

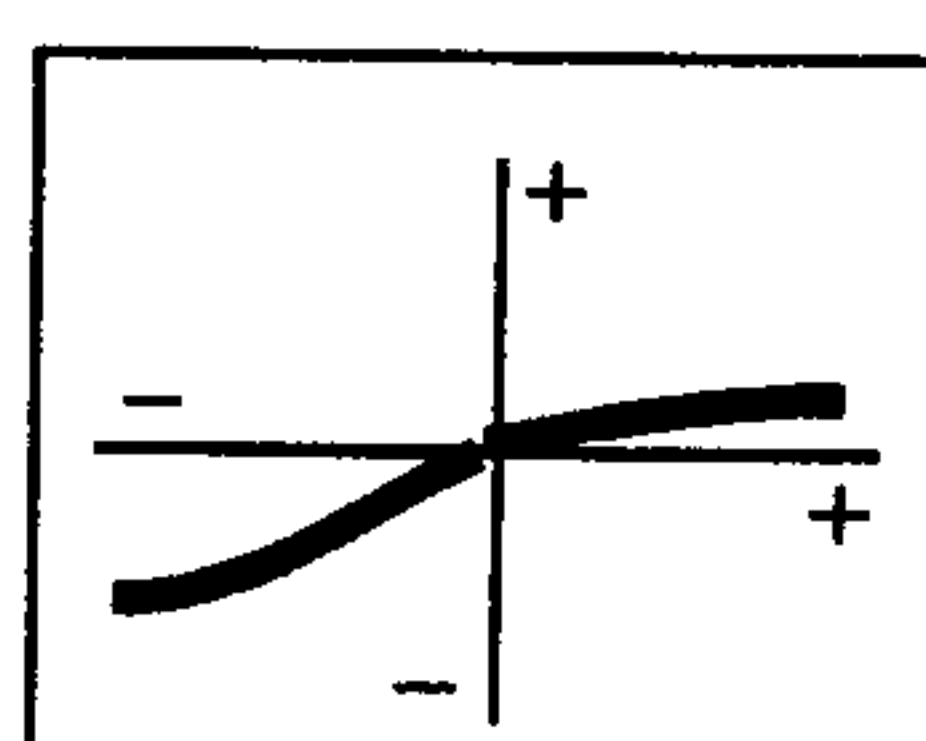


FIG.1 5(d)

$$\beta f_{act} = \beta f_{+}$$

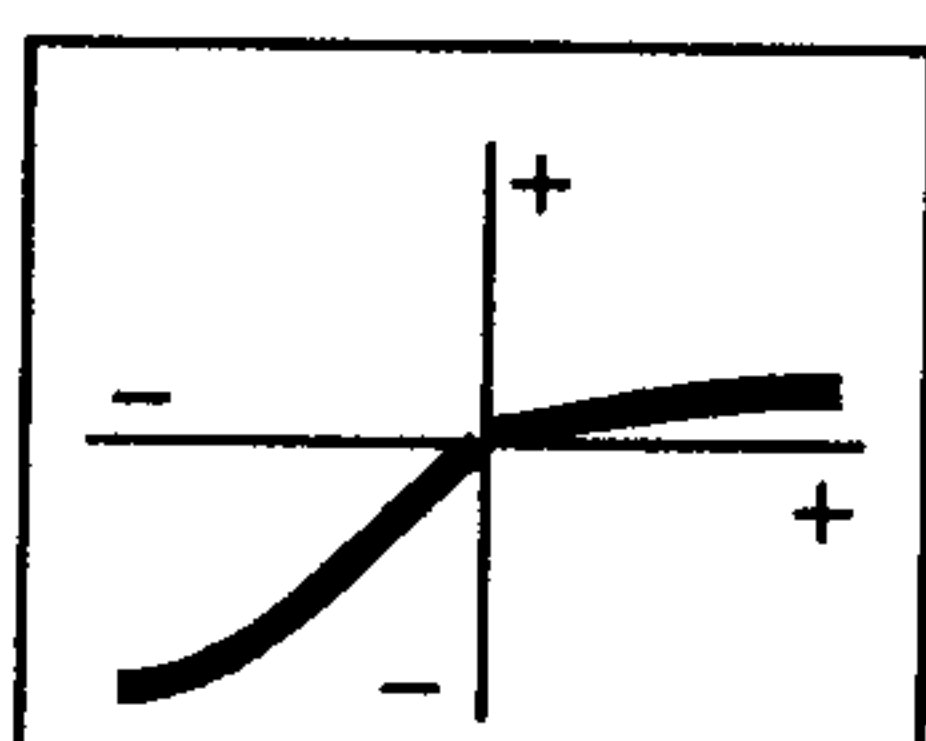
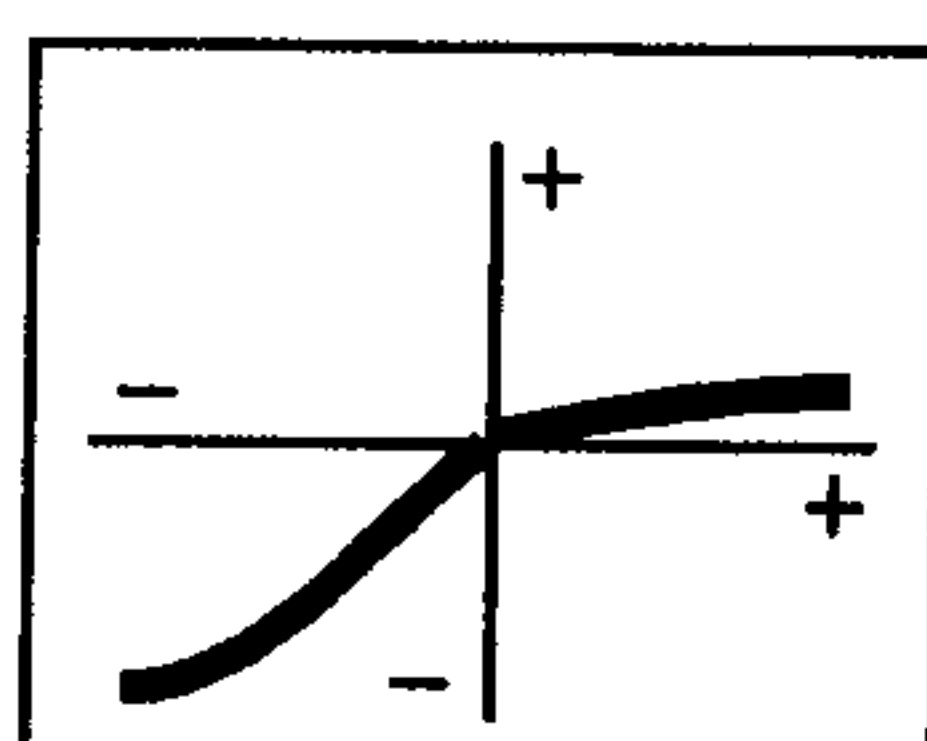


FIG.1 5(e)

$$\beta f_{act} = \beta f_{++}$$



14 / 26

FIG.16(a)

$$\beta r_{\text{act}} = \beta r_{--}$$

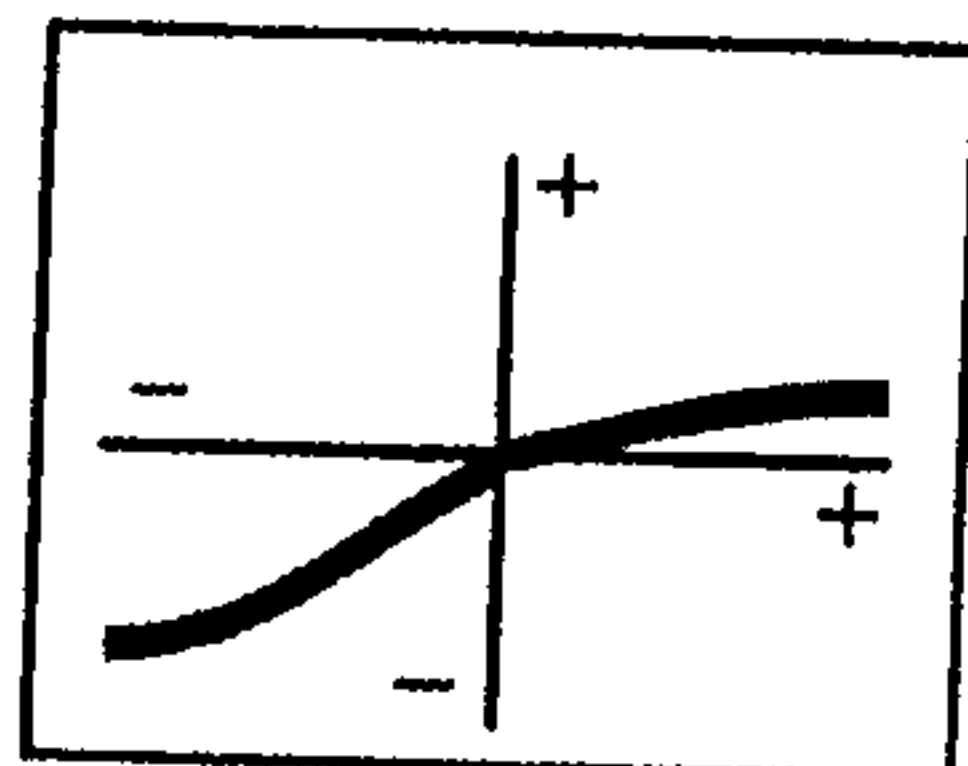


FIG.16(b)

$$\beta r_{\text{act}} = \beta r_{-}$$

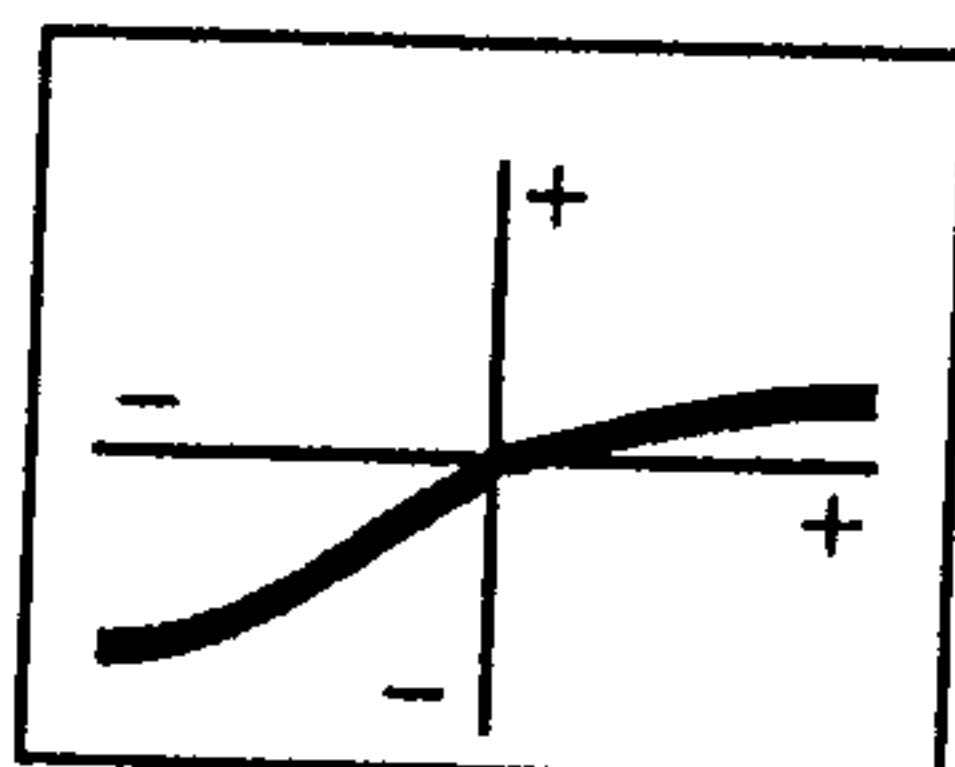


FIG.16(c)

$$\beta r_{\text{act}} = 0$$

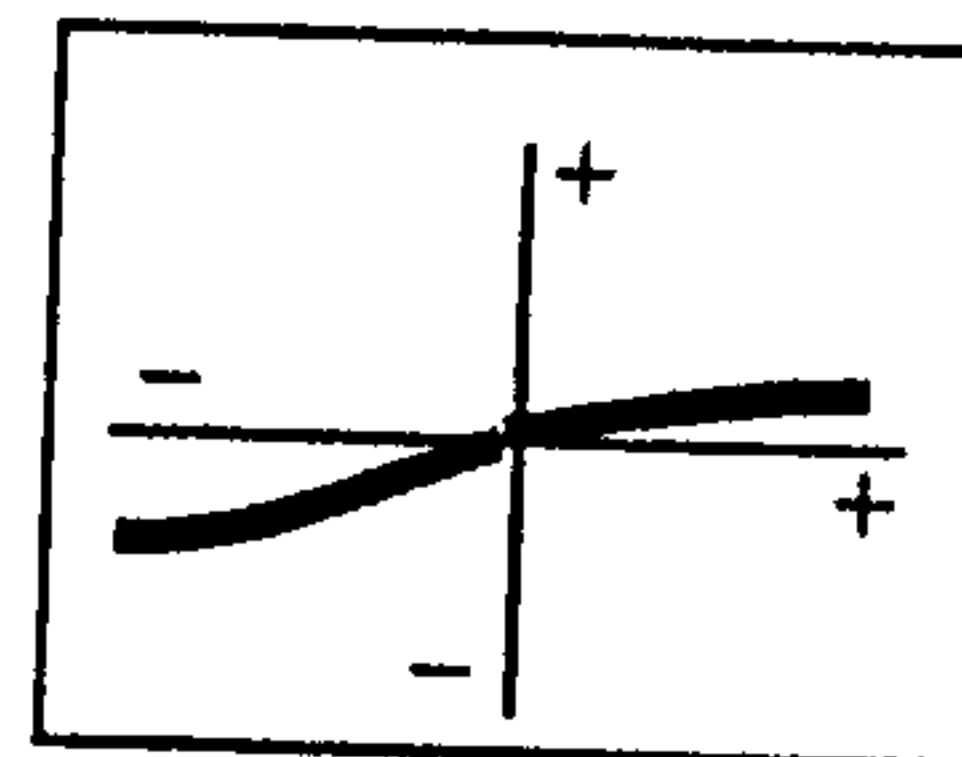


FIG.16(d)

$$\beta r_{\text{act}} = \beta r_{+}$$

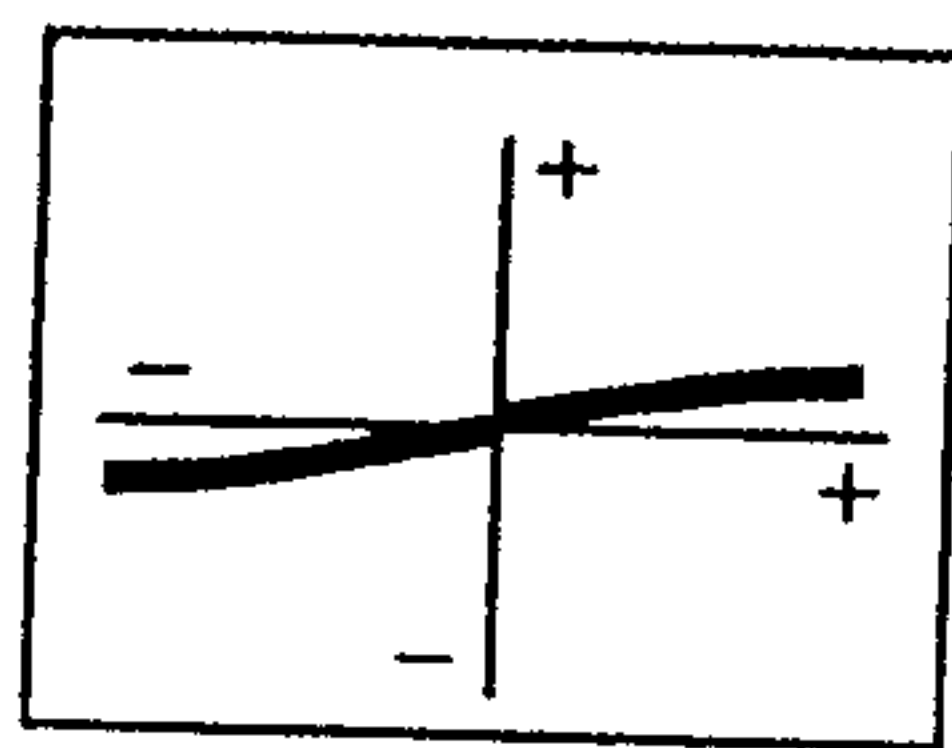


FIG.16(e)

$$\beta r_{\text{act}} = \beta r_{++}$$

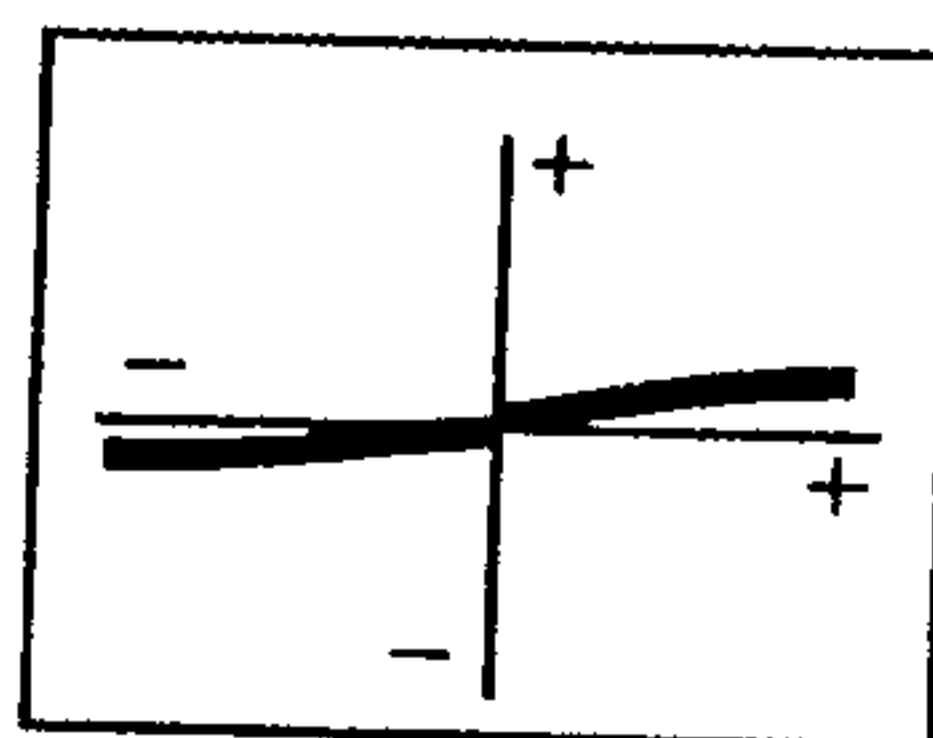


FIG.17

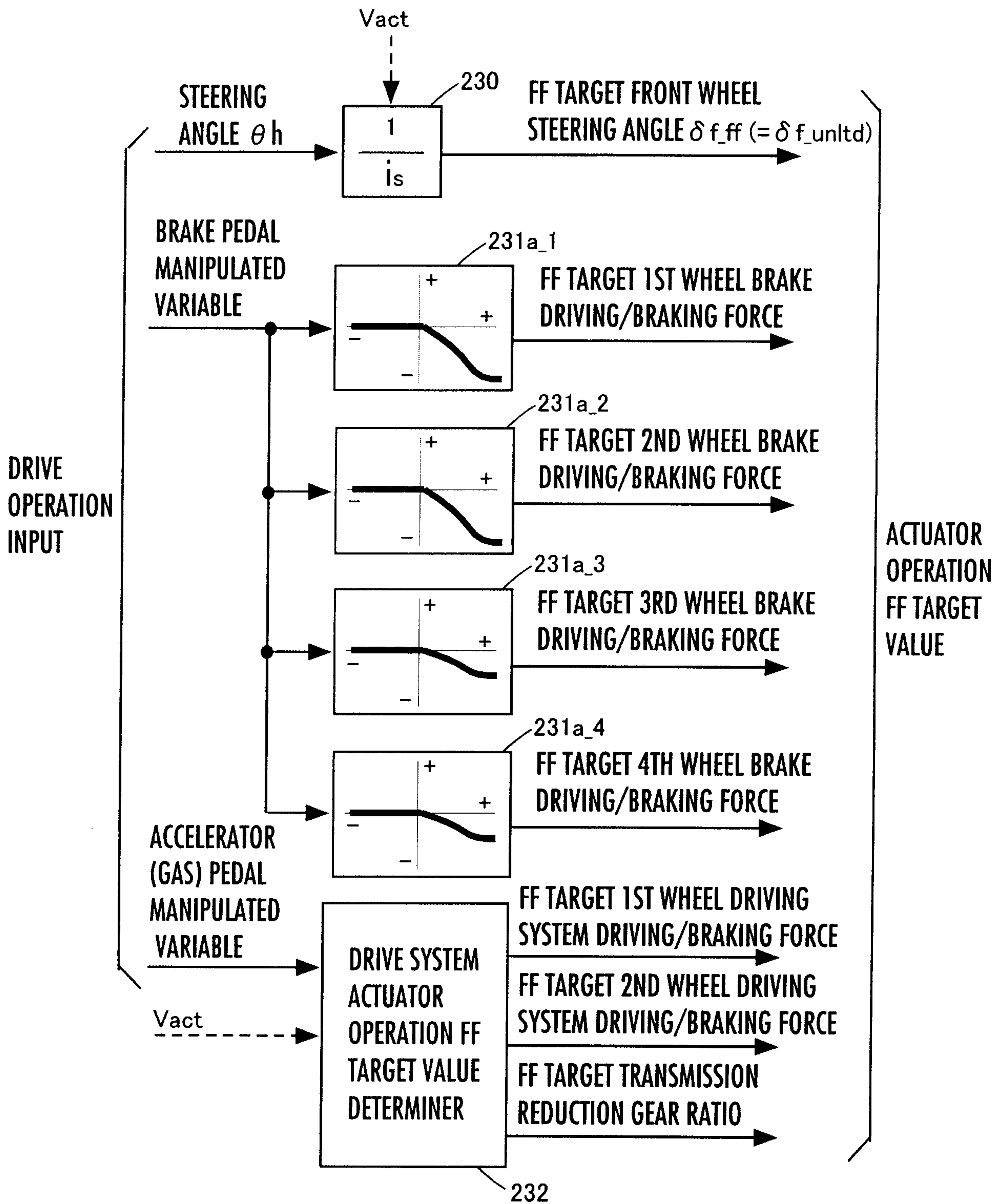
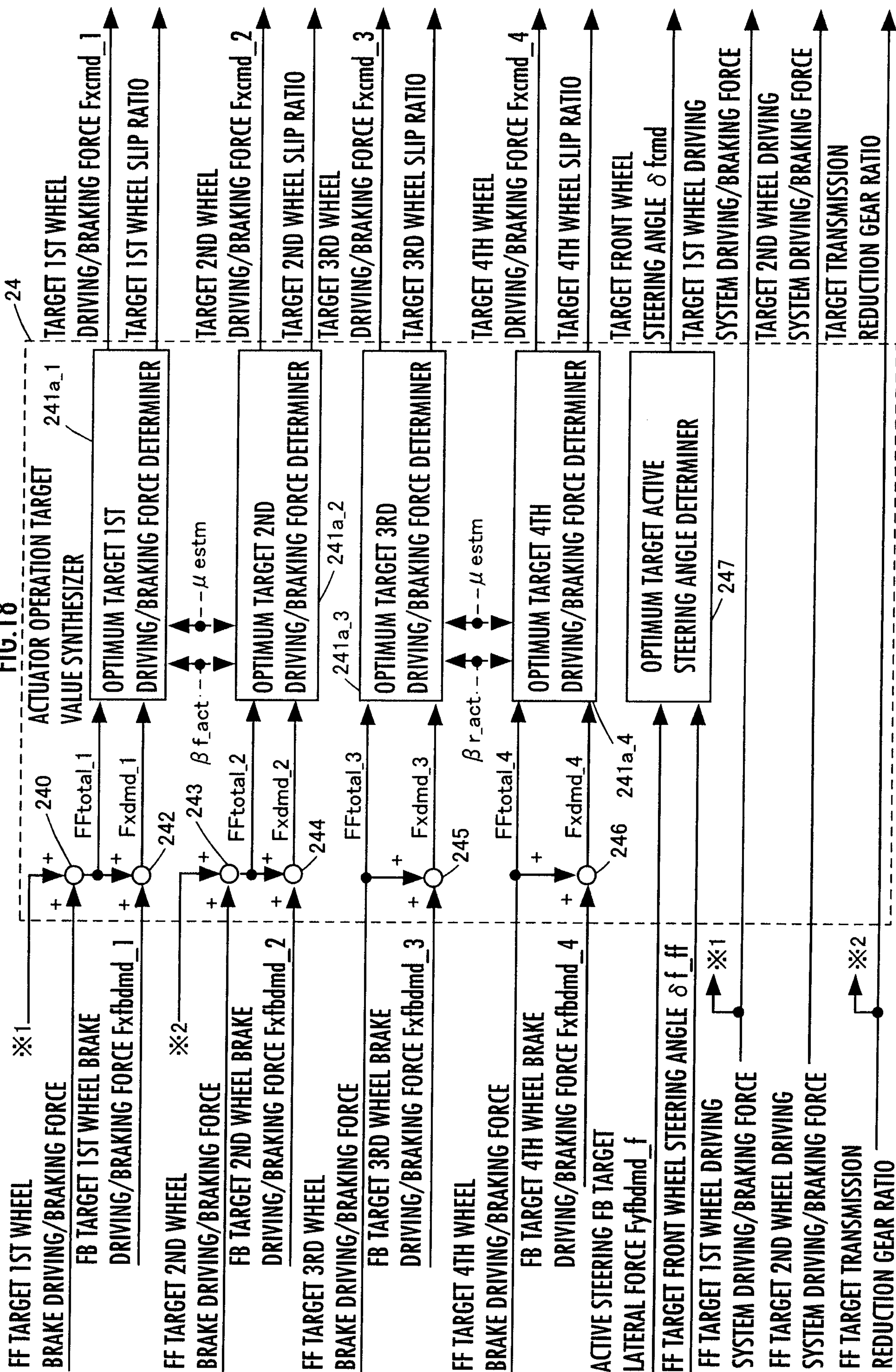
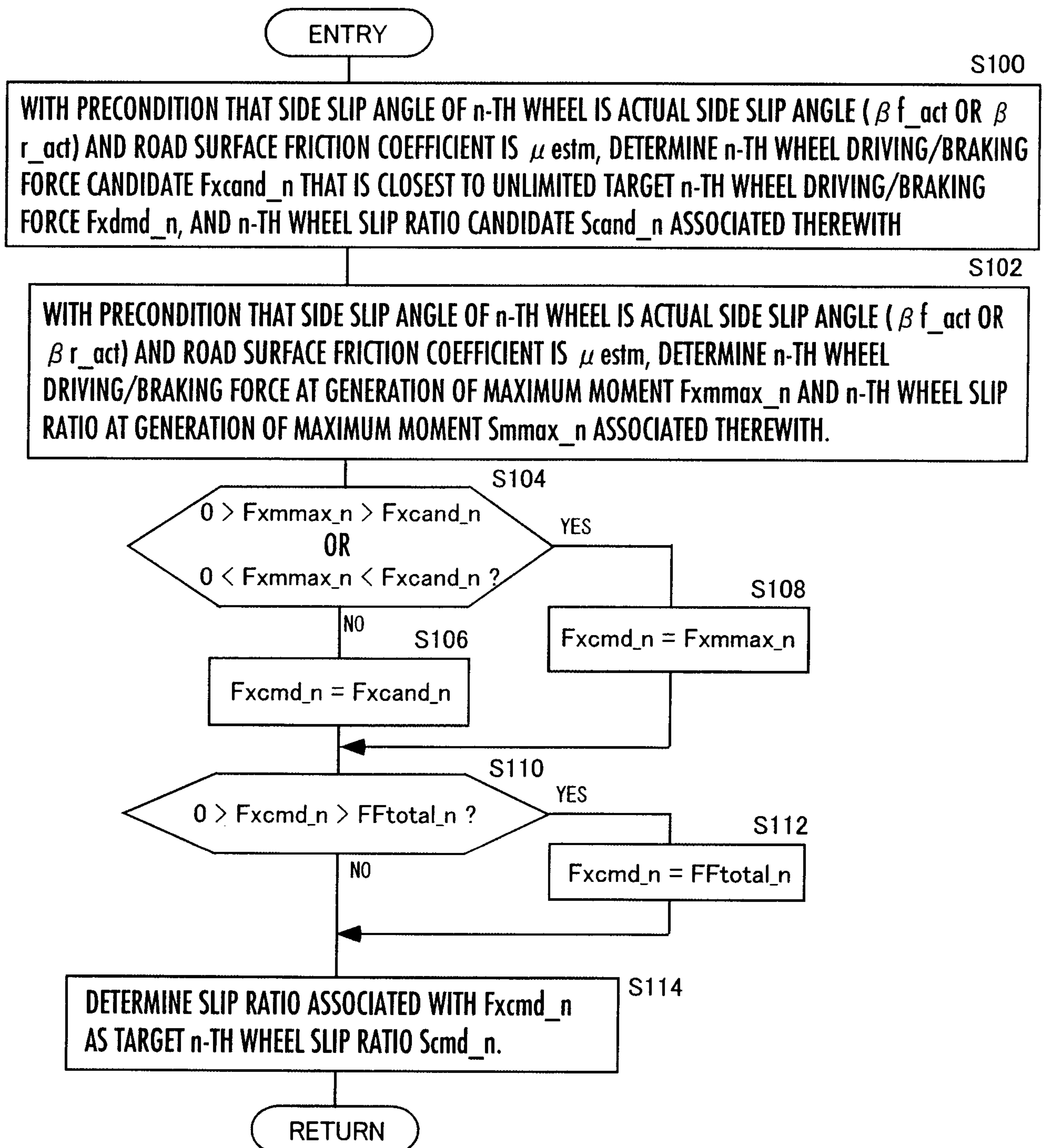


FIG. 18



17 / 26

FIG.19



18 / 26

FIG.20

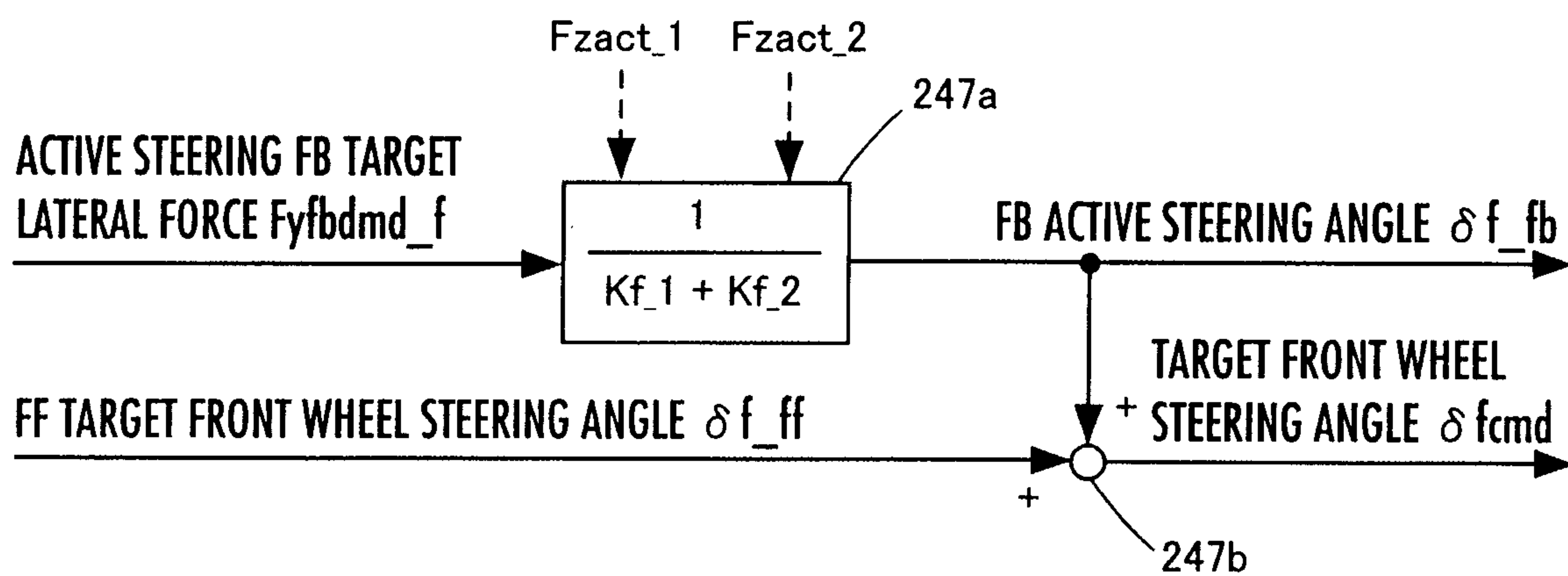


FIG.21

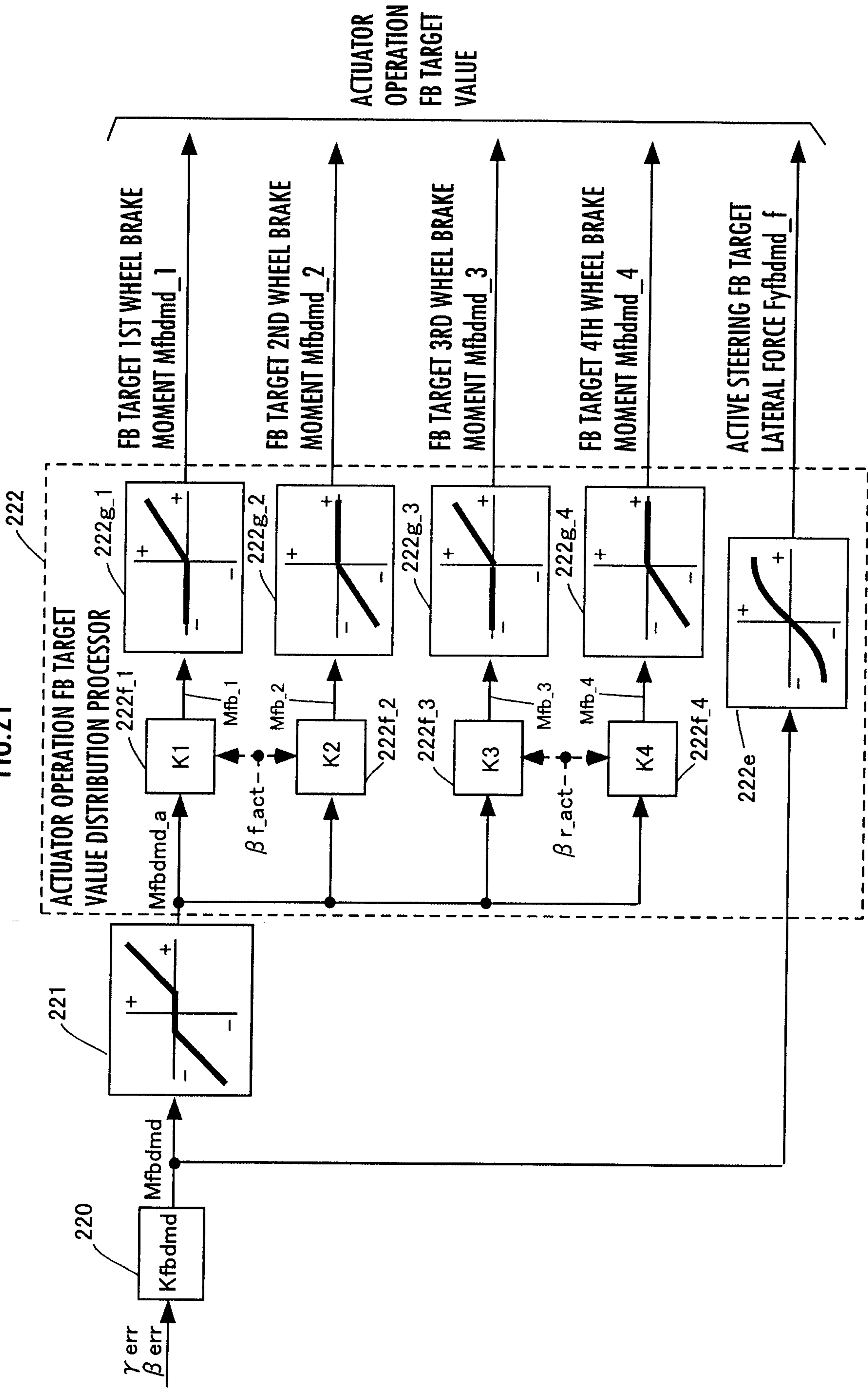
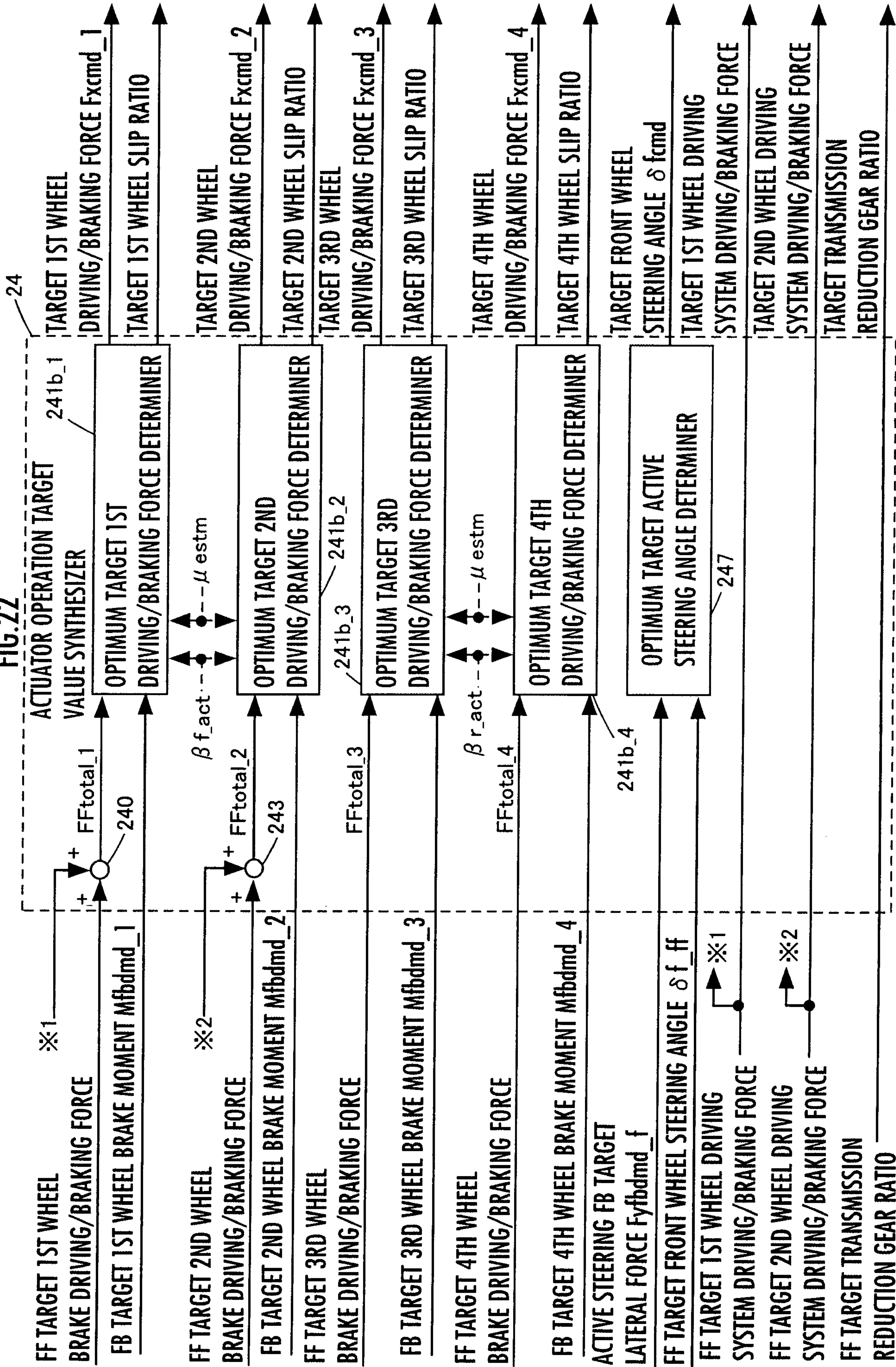
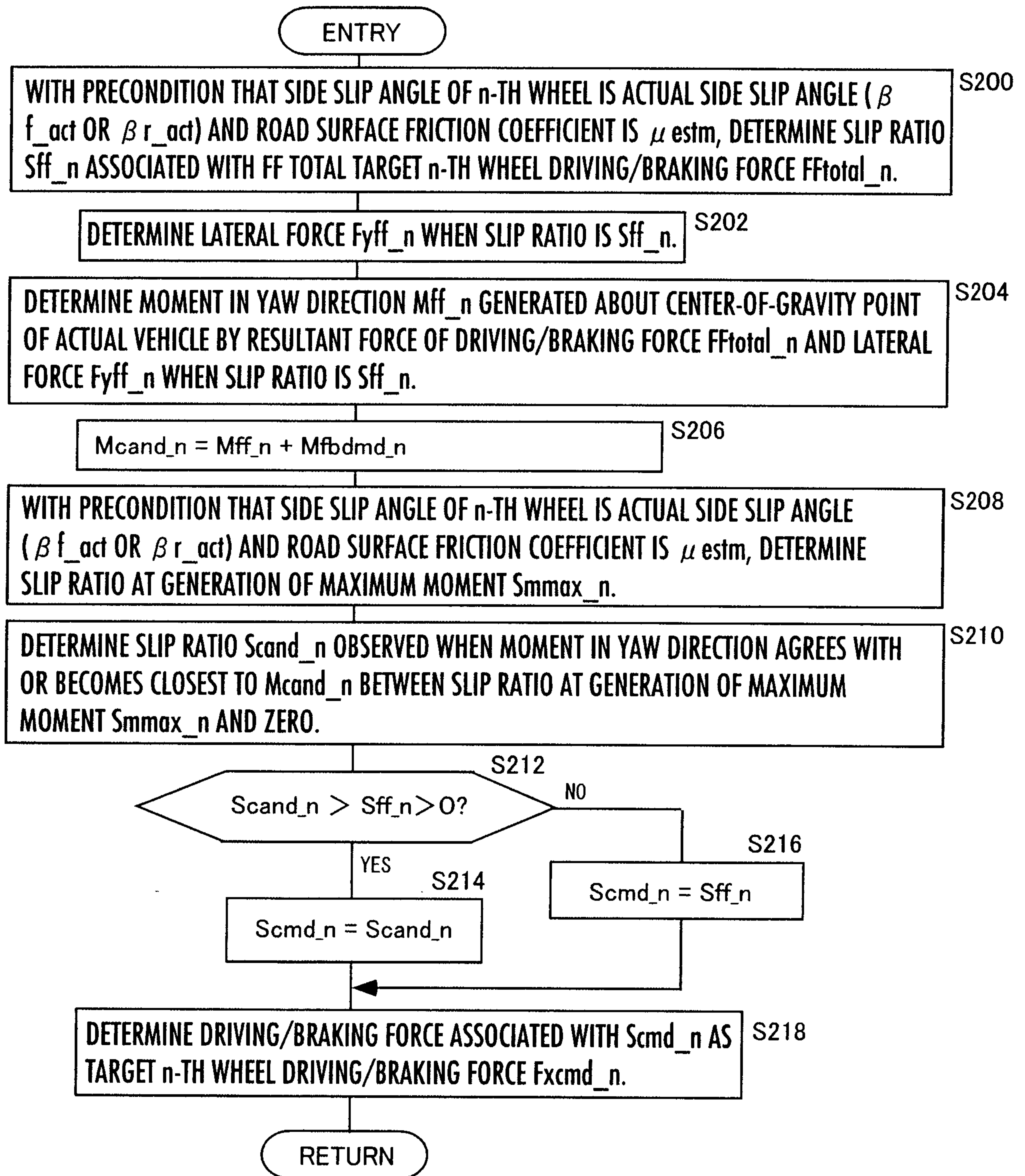


FIG. 22



21 / 26

FIG.23



22 / 26

FIG.24

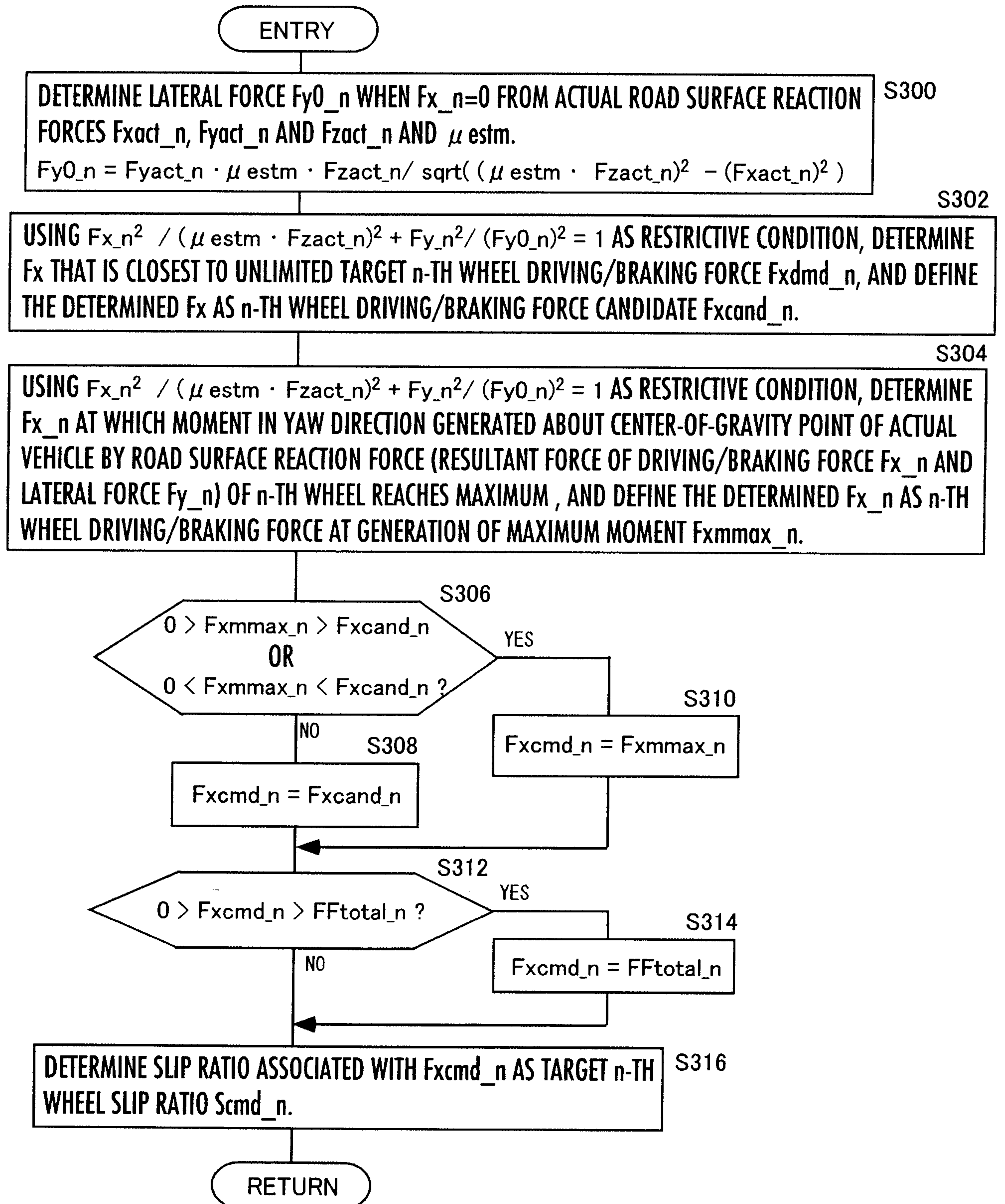
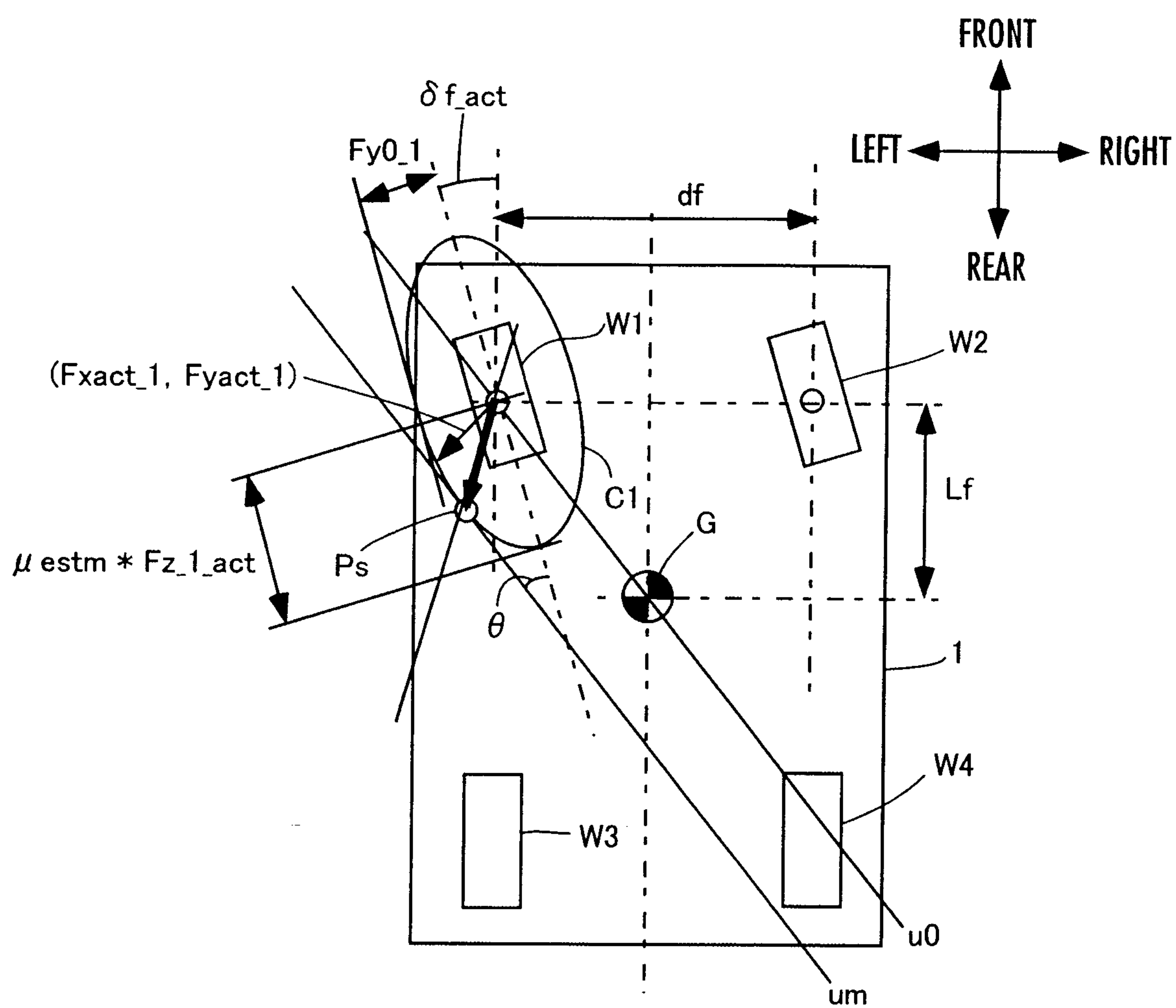
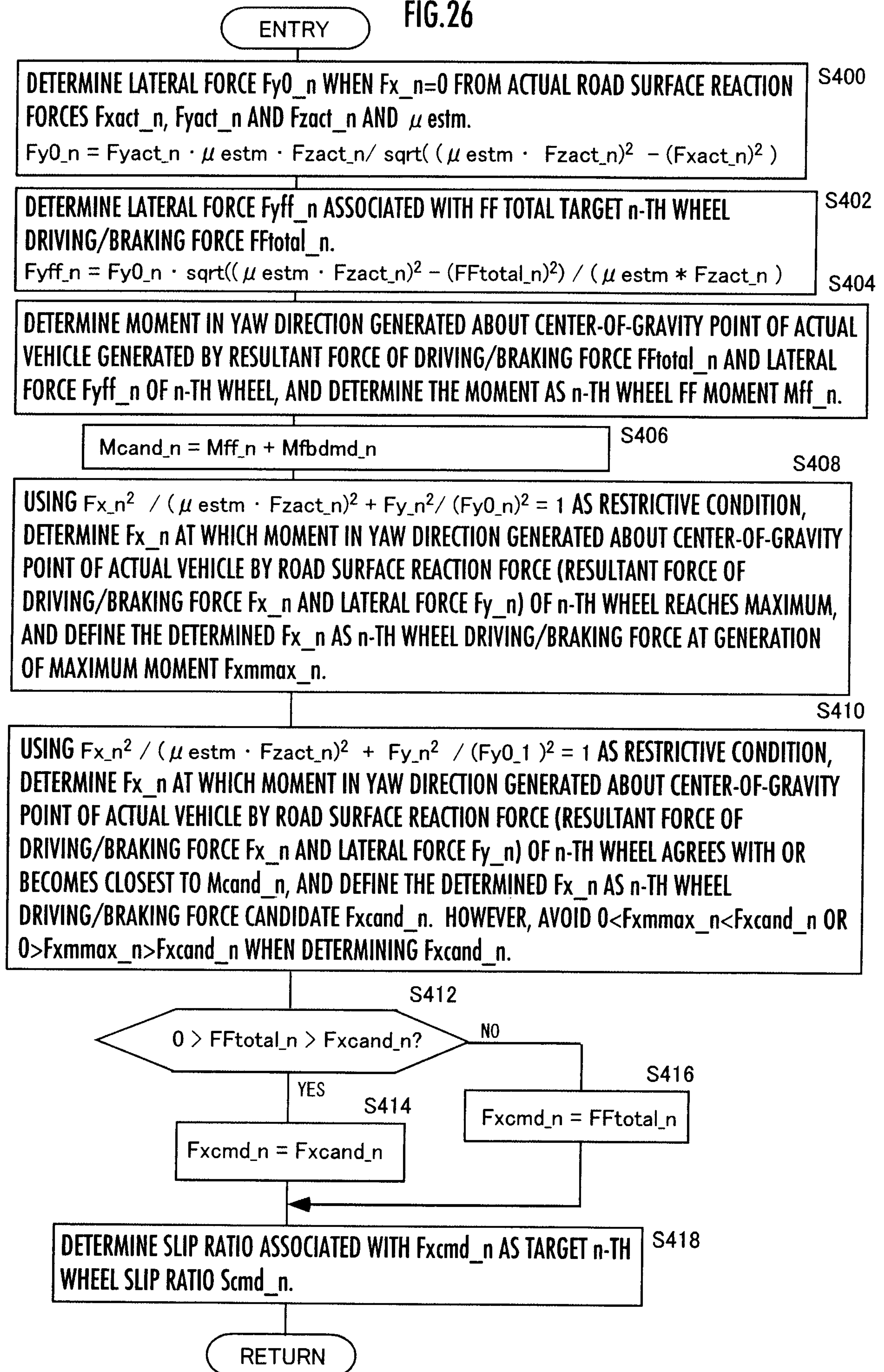


FIG.25



24 / 26

FIG.26



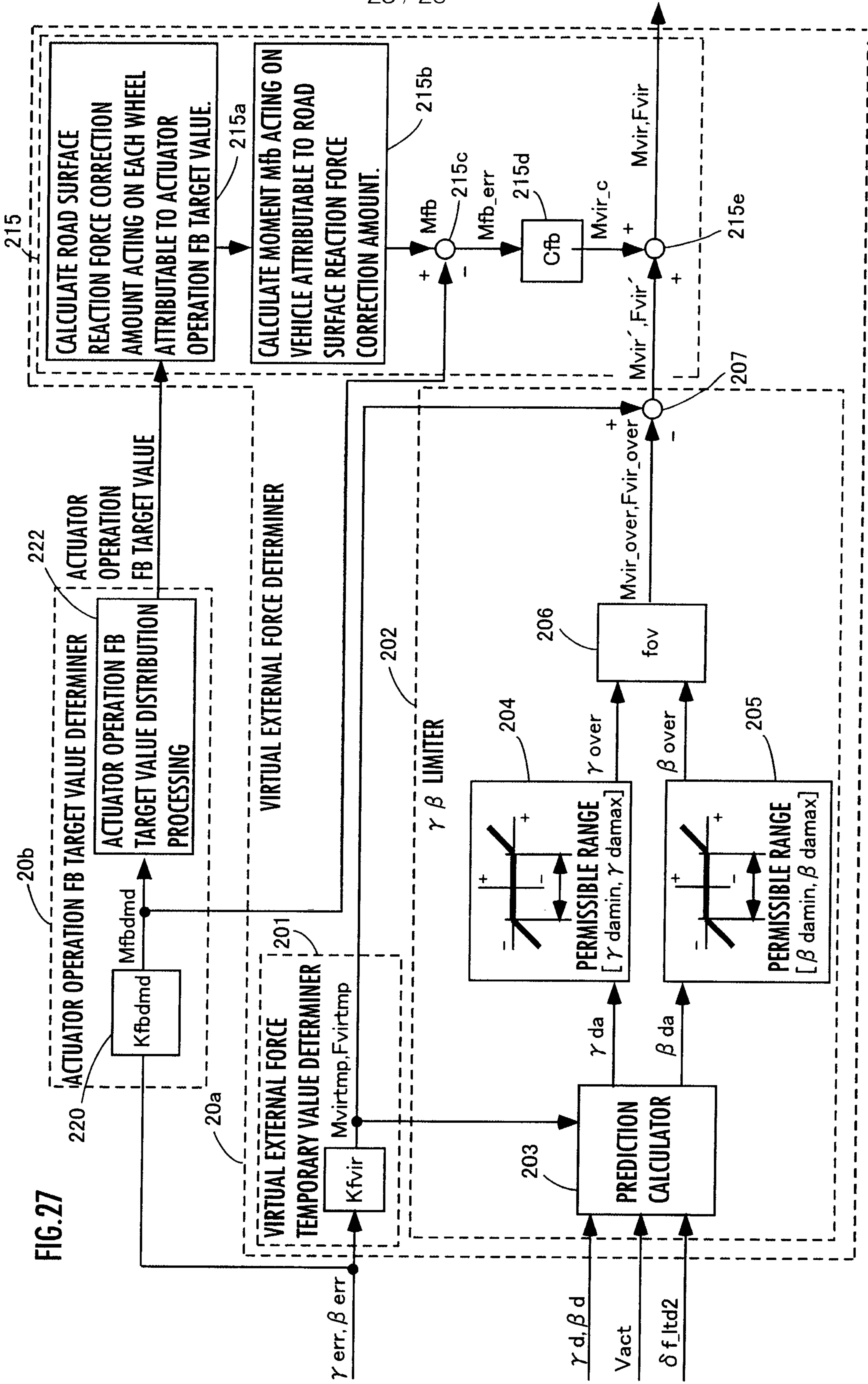
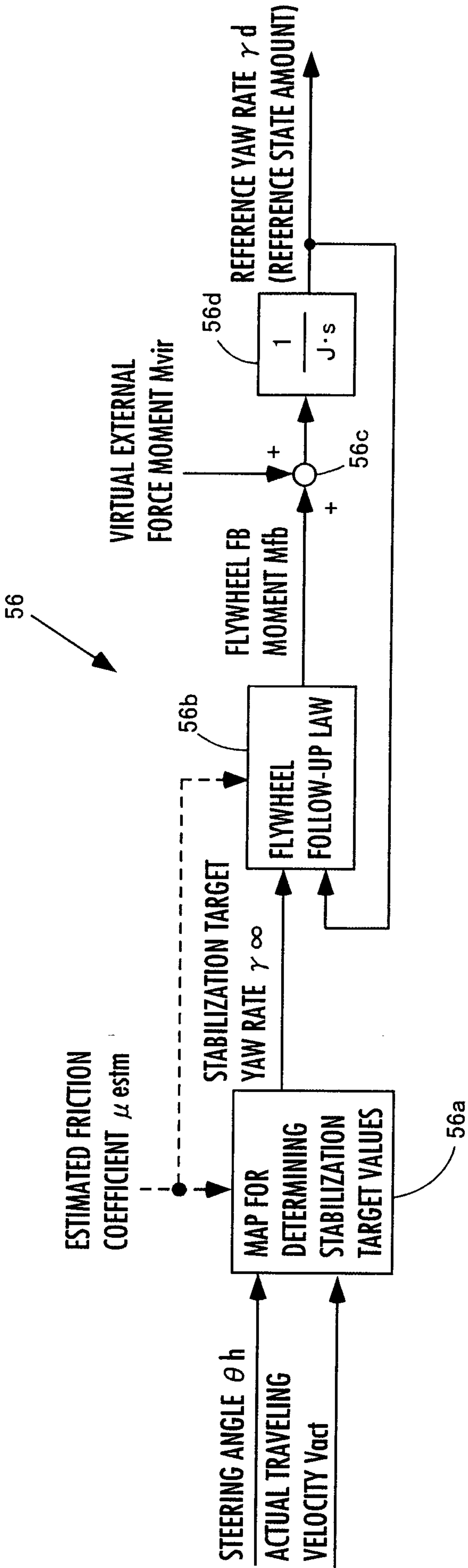


FIG.28



ENTRY

DETERMINE LATERAL FORCE F_{y0_n} WHEN $F_{x\_n}=0$ FROM ACTUAL ROAD SURFACE REACTION FORCES F_{xact_n} , F_{yact_n} AND F_{zact_n} AND μ_{estm} .

S300

$$F_{y0\_n} = F_{yact\_n} \cdot \mu_{estm} \cdot F_{zact\_n} / \sqrt{(\mu_{estm} \cdot F_{zact\_n})^2 - (F_{xact\_n})^2}$$

S302

USING $F_{x\_n}^2 / (\mu_{estm} \cdot F_{zact\_n})^2 + F_{y\_n}^2 / (F_{y0\_n})^2 = 1$ AS RESTRICTIVE CONDITION, DETERMINE F_x THAT IS CLOSEST TO UNLIMITED TARGET n -TH WHEEL DRIVING/BRAKING FORCE F_{xdmd_n} , AND DEFINE THE DETERMINED F_x AS n -TH WHEEL DRIVING/BRAKING FORCE CANDIDATE F_{xcand_n} .

S304

USING $F_{x\_n}^2 / (\mu_{estm} \cdot F_{zact\_n})^2 + F_{y\_n}^2 / (F_{y0\_n})^2 = 1$ AS RESTRICTIVE CONDITION, DETERMINE F_{x_n} AT WHICH MOMENT IN YAW DIRECTION GENERATED ABOUT CENTER-OF-GRAVITY POINT OF ACTUAL VEHICLE BY ROAD SURFACE REACTION FORCE (RESULTANT FORCE OF DRIVING/BRAKING FORCE F_{x_n} AND LATERAL FORCE F_{y_n}) OF n -TH WHEEL REACHES MAXIMUM, AND DEFINE THE DETERMINED F_{x_n} AS n -TH WHEEL DRIVING/BRAKING FORCE AT GENERATION OF MAXIMUM MOMENT F_{xmmax_n} .

S306

$0 > F_{xmmax\_n} > F_{xcand\_n}$
OR
 $0 < F_{xmmax\_n} < F_{xcand\_n}$?

YES

S310

$F_{xcmd\_n} = F_{xmmax\_n}$

NO

S308

$F_{xcmd\_n} = F_{xcand\_n}$

S312

$0 > F_{xcmd\_n} > FF_{total\_n}$?

YES

S314

$F_{xcmd\_n} = FF_{total\_n}$

NO

DETERMINE SLIP RATIO ASSOCIATED WITH F_{xcmd_n} AS TARGET n -TH WHEEL SLIP RATIO $Scmd\_n$.

S316

RETURN